Recommended Practices
for
AP242 Business Object Model XML
Assembly Structure

Release 1.00

February 13, 2015

Contacts:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAx-IF</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jochen Boy</td>
<td>Phil Rosché</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROSTEP AG / ProSTEP iViP Assoc.</td>
<td>ACCR / PDES, Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dolivostraße 11 / Germany</td>
<td>125 King Charles Circle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64293 Darmstadt / Germany</td>
<td>Summerville, SC  29485 / USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="mailto:jochen.boy@prostep.com">jochen.boy@prostep.com</a></td>
<td><a href="mailto:phil.rosche@accr-llc.com">phil.rosche@accr-llc.com</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical

| Guillaume Hirel                 | Jochen Haenisch |
| T-Systems                       | Jotne EPM       |
| guillaume.hirel@t-systems.com   | jochen.haenisch@jotne.com |
| Frédéric Darré                  |            |
| Airbus Cimpa                    |            |
| frederic.darre@airbus.com       |            |

© CAx Implementor Forum
# Table of Contents

1 **Introduction** .................................................................................................................. 8  
1.1 Document Overview ........................................................................................................ 8  
1.1.1 Goal and Objectives ................................................................................................... 8  
1.1.2 Scope .......................................................................................................................... 8  
1.1.3 Intended Audience ...................................................................................................... 8  
1.1.4 Intended Use ............................................................................................................... 8  
1.1.5 Document Style ......................................................................................................... 9  
1.1.6 Document Structure .................................................................................................. 9  
1.1.7 Instantiation Diagrams ............................................................................................... 9  
1.2 **Organizational Framework** ....................................................................................... 13  
1.2.1 Vendor Communities ............................................................................................... 13  
1.2.2 User Communities .................................................................................................... 13  
1.3 Maintenance of this Document ....................................................................................... 13  
2 **Scope** ............................................................................................................................. 14  
3 Reference to Recommended Practices ............................................................................... 14  
4 **Basic Concepts** .............................................................................................................. 15  
4.1 XML Format Specifics ..................................................................................................... 15  
4.1.1 Character Set ............................................................................................................ 15  
4.1.2 Containment vs. Referencing .................................................................................... 15  
4.1.3 Root Objects and DataContainer ............................................................................. 16  
4.1.4 Subtyping ................................................................................................................ 16  
4.1.5 Header object ........................................................................................................... 17  
4.1.6 XML context tagging ............................................................................................... 17  
4.1.7 Schema version and document version identifications ........................................... 18  
4.1.8 Dates ....................................................................................................................... 18  
4.1.9 STEP BO Model XML File Extensions .................................................................... 18  
4.2 Rules for Attribute Cardinality ....................................................................................... 18  
4.2.1 Entities and Attributes not supported by the Preprocessor .................................... 18  
4.2.2 Entities and Attributes not supported by the Postprocessor ................................... 19  
4.2.3 Unspecified and Optional Attribute Values ............................................................. 19  
4.2.4 Derived Attributes ................................................................................................. 20  
4.3 Uniqueness of Identifiers ............................................................................................... 20  
4.4 Project Specific Values ................................................................................................. 20  
4.5 Blanks in String Values ................................................................................................ 21  
4.6 Basic Building Blocks ..................................................................................................... 21  
4.6.1 Template “ExchangeContext” ................................................................................ 21  
4.6.2 Template “Organization” ......................................................................................... 23  
4.6.3 Template “Unit” ......................................................................................................... 25  
4.6.4 Template “Class” ....................................................................................................... 26  
4.6.5 Template “Classification” ....................................................................................... 29  
4.6.6 Template “Identifier” ............................................................................................. 31  
4.6.7 Template “Description” ........................................................................................... 32  
4.6.8 Template “ViewContext” ......................................................................................... 33  
4.6.9 Template “NumericalValue” .................................................................................... 34
4.6.10 Template “StringValue”.................................................................................................................. 36
4.6.11 Template “DateTime”........................................................................................................................... 38
4.6.12 Template “Approval”........................................................................................................................... 40
4.6.13 Template “Person” ............................................................................................................................... 43
4.6.14 Template “PersonInOrganization”....................................................................................................... 44

5 Part Identification and Classification ................................................................................................. 49
5.1 Templates “Part” and “Assembly” .......................................................................................................... 50
5.1.1 Part....................................................................................................................................................... 52
5.1.2 PartVersion ....................................................................................................................................... 55
5.1.3 PartView .......................................................................................................................................... 57
5.1.4 AssemblyDefinition ........................................................................................................................... 60

6 Part Properties ....................................................................................................................................... 62
6.1 Template “GeometricModel” .................................................................................................................. 62
6.1.1 ExternalGeometricModel / ComposedGeometricModel ................................................................. 65
6.1.2 The subtype of ExternalGeometricModel ......................................................................................... 67
6.2 Template “PartProperty” ....................................................................................................................... 67
6.3 Template “ShapeDependentProperty” .................................................................................................. 70
6.3.1 GeneralShapeDependentProperty .................................................................................................... 71

7 Part Structure and Relationships ...................................................................................................... 74
7.1 Template “SingleOccurrence” .............................................................................................................. 74
7.2 Template “SpecifiedOccurrence” .......................................................................................................... 79
7.3 Full / Simplified Positioning Representation ......................................................................................... 85
7.3.1 Template “Simplified Positioning Representation” ............................................................................. 86
7.3.2 Full Positioning Representations ...................................................................................................... 89

8 Document Identification and Classification ........................................................................................ 105
8.1 Template “Document” .......................................................................................................................... 106
8.1.1 Document......................................................................................................................................... 107
8.1.2 DocumentVersion ............................................................................................................................... 110
8.1.3 DocumentDefinition .......................................................................................................................... 112

9 External Files ....................................................................................................................................... 115
9.1 Template “DigitalFile” .......................................................................................................................... 115
9.2 File Structure (monolithic/nested) ........................................................................................................ 120

10 Document and File Properties ......................................................................................................... 127
10.1 Template “FormatProperty” ................................................................................................................ 127
10.2 Template “ContentProperty” .............................................................................................................. 129
10.3 Template “CreationProperty” ............................................................................................................. 132
10.4 Template “SizeProperty” ..................................................................................................................... 133
10.5 Template “DocumentFileProperty” .................................................................................................... 134

11 Document and File Association to Product Data ............................................................................. 136
11.1 Template “CAx Representation for DocumentAssignment” ............................................................... 137
11.2 Template “PDM Representation for DocumentAssignment” ............................................................. 140

12 User-Defined Attributes .................................................................................................................. 144
12.1 Fundamental concepts ......................................................................................................................... 144
12.2 Template “GeneralProperty” ............................................................................................................ 144
12.3 Group of attributes and group of attributes values ........................................ 147
12.4 Specifying the target for the attribute ............................................................... 148
  12.4.1 Attributes at the part level ........................................................................ 148
  12.4.2 Attributes at component instances in an assembly .................................. 148
  12.4.3 Attributes at the shape level ...................................................................... 149
12.5 Definition of attribute value .............................................................................. 149
  12.5.1 Descriptive / String attribute ...................................................................... 150
  12.5.2 Value attribute ......................................................................................... 150
  12.5.3 Measure attribute ....................................................................................... 150
12.6 Transfer of Meta-Data for the User Defined Attributes ................................... 150
12.6.1 Designation of the Attribute Type ................................................................. 151

13 Validation Properties ........................................................................................... 151
  13.1 Assembly Validation Properties (Notional Solid, Number of Children) ......... 152
    13.1.1 Number of Children ................................................................................. 152
    13.1.2 Notional Solids Centroid Position ............................................................. 153
  13.2 Geometric Validation Properties (Repeated from referenced Parts) ............ 155
    13.2.1 Validation Properties for Solid Geometry ................................................ 155
    13.2.2 Validation Properties for Surface Geometry ............................................ 157
    13.2.3 Validation Properties for Curve / Wireframe Geometry .......................... 158
    13.2.4 Bounding Box ......................................................................................... 158

14 Outlook ................................................................................................................. 159
  14.1 “Model-based” approach for future versions of this document .................... 159
  14.2 Planned PDM-IF and PDM Recommended Practices .................................... 160

15 List of Templates ................................................................................................... 161

Annex A XML Schema derivation from BO Model EXPRESS Schema .......... 162
  A.1 General concepts ............................................................................................ 162
    A.1.1 General concepts ..................................................................................... 162
    A.1.2 Mapping of EXPRESS entity data types .................................................. 163
    A.1.3 Mapping of named data types ................................................................. 164
    A.1.4 Mapping of SELECT data types .............................................................. 164
    A.1.5 Mapping of EXPRESS attributes ............................................................ 164
    A.1.6 Not mapped EXPRESS Constructs ......................................................... 167
    A.1.7 Containment and referencing rules ........................................................... 168
    A.1.8 Change of Direction for Associations ...................................................... 169
    A.1.9 Representation of Id Attribute .................................................................. 170
    A.1.10 Multilanguage Support .......................................................................... 171
    A.1.11 Representation of Date and Time ............................................................ 172
  A.2 Unit of Serialization ......................................................................................... 172
  A.3 XML configuration specification ...................................................................... 173

Annex B Known Issues .............................................................................................. 174

Annex C Reference Documents ................................................................................. 175

Annex D Conversion from implicitly to explicitly defined transformation .......... 176

Annex E Recommendation for the Definition of Units .......................................... 177
  E.1 SI Base Unit Definitions .................................................................................. 178
Annex F  AP214 AIM to AP242 BOM Mapping

List of Figures
Figure 1: Template “ExchangeContext”.................................21
Figure 2: Template "Organization"......................................23
Figure 3: Template "Unit" ..............................................25
Figure 4: Template "Class"...............................................27
Figure 5: Template "Classification".....................................29
Figure 6: Template "Identifier"..........................................31
Figure 7: Template "ViewContext"......................................33
Figure 8: Template "NumericalValue".................................34
Figure 9: Template "StringValue"......................................36
Figure 10: Template "DateTime".........................................38
Figure 11: Template "Approval".........................................40
Figure 12: Template “Person”..........................................43
Figure 13: Template “PersonInOrganization”.........................45
Figure 14: Template “Part”..............................................51
Figure 15: Template “Assembly”........................................52
Figure 16: Template “GeometricModel”..............................62
Figure 17: Template “PartProperty”....................................68
Figure 18: Template “ShapeDependentProperty” for either PartView or ShapeElement........71
Figure 19: Template "SingleOccurrence"..............................75
Figure 20: Template “SpecifiedOccurrence”.........................80
Figure 21: Template “Simplified Positioning Representation”........86
Figure 22: Instantiation example if Part #2 has geometry ........88
Figure 23: Full Positioning Representation with Implicit Transformation........91
Figure 24: Full Positioning Representation with Explicit Transformation........96
Figure 25: Full Positioning Representation with Same Coordinate Space ..........101
Figure 26: Template “Document”...................................107
Figure 27: Template “DigitalFile”...................................116
Figure 28: Example for Nested Structure............................121
Figure 29: Example for Nested Structure with additional part-level XML files ..........121
Figure 30: Element Structure for Nested XML File (using CAx representation)........123
Figure 31: Element Structure for Nested XML File (using PDM representation)........126
Figure 32: Template “FormatProperty”..............................127
Figure 33: Template “ContentProperty”..............................130
Figure 34: Template “CreationProperty”..............................132
Figure 35: Template “SizeProperty”................................133
Figure 36: Template “DocumentFileProperty“........................135
Figure 37: Template “CAx Representation for DocumentAssignment”.................138
Figure 38: Template “PDM Representation for DocumentAssignment”.................141
Figure 39: Definition of an attribute name and its usage..........................145
List of Tables

Table 1: Instance Diagram Notation ................................................................. 12
Table 2: “ExchangeContext” Attributes ............................................................ 21
Table 3: “Organization” Attributes ................................................................. 24
Table 4: “Unit” Attributes ............................................................................. 25
Table 5: “Class” Attributes ............................................................................ 27
Table 6: “ExternalClassSystem” Attributes ...................................................... 28
Table 7: “Classification” Attributes ................................................................. 30
Table 8: “Identifier” Attributes ..................................................................... 31
Table 9: “ViewContext” Attributes ................................................................. 33
Table 10: “NumericalValue” Attributes ............................................................ 35
Table 11: “StringValue” Attributes ................................................................ 37
Table 12: “DateTime” Attributes .................................................................... 39
Table 13: “ApprovalAssignment” Attributes .................................................... 41
Table 14: “Approval” Attributes .................................................................... 42
Table 15: “Person” Attributes ........................................................................ 44
Table 16: “OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment” Attributes ......... 46
Table 17: “PersonInOrganization” Attributes .................................................... 48
Table 18: “Part” Attributes ............................................................................ 54
Table 19: “PartVersion” Attributes ................................................................. 56
Table 20: “PartView” Attributes ..................................................................... 59
Table 21: “AssemblyDefinition” Attributes, including attributes inherited from “PartView” .... 61
Table 22: “GeometricModel” Attributes ........................................................... 63
Table 23: “GeometricCoordinateSpace” Attributes ........................................ 64
Table 24: “AxisPlacement” Attributes .............................................................. 64
Table 25: “ComposedGeometricModel” / “ExternalGeometricModel” Attributes ................................................................. 66
Table 26: “PartProperty” Attributes ................................................................ 69
Table 27: "GeneralShapeDependentProperty" Attributes ........................................ 71
Table 28: "ShapeElement" Attributes ..................................................................... 72
Table 29: "NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage" Attributes ......................................... 77
Table 30: "SingleOccurrence" Attributes ................................................................ 78
Table 31: "SpecifiedOccurrence" Attributes .............................................................. 84
Table 32: "CartesianTransformation" Attributes ....................................................... 87
Table 33: "GeometricRepresentationRelationshipWithPlacementTransformation" Attributes 95
Table 34: "GeometricRepresentationRelationshipWithCartesianTransformation" Attributes 100
Table 35: "GeometricRepresentationRelationshipWithSameCoordinateSpace" Attributes .. 104
Table 36: "Document" Attributes .......................................................................... 109
Table 37: "DocumentVersion" Attributes ................................................................. 111
Table 38: "(Digital)DocumentDefinition" Attributes ................................................ 114
Table 39: "DigitalFile" Attributes .......................................................................... 118
Table 40: "ExternalItem" Attributes ...................................................................... 120
Table 41: "FormatProperty" Attributes .................................................................. 127
Table 42: "ContentProperty" Attributes ................................................................ 130
Table 43: "CreationProperty" Attributes ................................................................ 133
Table 44: "SizeProperty" Attributes .................................................................... 133
Table 45: "DocumentAssignment" Attributes ......................................................... 136
Table 46: "GeneralProperty" Attributes .................................................................. 146

**Document History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revision</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>2014-05-13</td>
<td>Initial Release</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Introduction

1.1 Document Overview

1.1.1 Goal and Objectives

The goal of this document is to describe the recommended structure and attribute population for particular instance models created from the entities and attributes defined by the STEP AP242 Managed model based 3D engineering Business Object (BO) model and populated according to its XML Schema. The selected instance models illustrate how to encode data values that need to be exchanged in support of key industry requirements common across the mechanical design domain. The objectives of the usage guide are to:

- Support the short-term needs of the requirements of the Aerospace & Defense and the Automotive industries in the realm of mechanical design
- Prevent the emergence of “flavors”, i.e. diverging/conflicting implementations of the AP242 BO Model XML for different communities
- Ensure consistency with existing Recommended Practices for Basic Product Data Management (PDM), Assembly Structure, External References and Attributes.

1.1.2 Scope

This document describes the Recommended Practices for the exchange of Assembly Structure data with external references to geometry files (regardless of file format). It is based on the STEP AP242 Business Object Model (ISO 10303-3001:2014) and the corresponding XML schemas, which can be found at:

  AP242_BusinessObjectModel.xsd – The BO Model XML Schema
- http://standards.iso.org/iso/ts/10303/-3000/-ed-1.tech/xml-
  schema/common/common.xsd - The XML Schema, which contains the structural definitions common to all STEP Business Object Models.

AP242 is the first STEP Business Object Model that is being implemented. During the development of this document and the related prototyping activities, several issues with the schemas and definitions have been identified. These have been documented in Bugzilla as official maintenance issues for AP242, and will dealt with as part of the ISO maintenance procedures. The issues are documented throughout this document, and gathered in Annex B for reference.

1.1.3 Intended Audience

This document is intended to be an implementation guide for developers of CAD, PDM and file translation application systems that must use assembly structure, and exchange it with other systems and applications, in support of the design engineering and related downstream business processes.

1.1.4 Intended Use

This document is intended to be a manual and companion to the developer of STEP data exchange and translator software used by applications and information management systems that rely on product data. It provides guidelines for the consistent preprocessor instance model creation and requirement value encoding to enable meaningful information exchange between different systems and applications using the STEP AP 242 BO model, and guidelines for the consistent interpretation by a postprocessor of the STEP AP 242 BO model exchange file.
1.1.5 Document Style

The overall document proceeds in an incremental, step-by-step fashion to describe, and in parallel to illustrate the recommended instantiations of the XML elements in the STEP AP 242 BO model.

The “template” concept is used in this document. Structures and sub-structures are defined in one section; they are then re-used in other sections of the documents. These templates are represented by the blue boxes in the diagrams.

The Instance Model diagram figures are presented using a graphical notation intended to illustrate the instance model.

Following each instance diagram, a table lists all the attributes of each displayed entity according to the XML schema specification of ISO 10303-3001. The table includes not only the attributes of the EXPRESS schema of the AP242 BO Model, but also inverse attributes of all possible relations to the element in question. Attributes that are considered important for the scope of these Recommended Practices are in these tables written in black. Attributes that are written in grey are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

Below the table, all recommended attributes (written in black) are listed and recommendations are made for them.

Finally, a STEP AP 242 BO model XML exchange structure example is included. The example exchange file corresponds directly to the instance model diagram and illustrates the very same thing using a different notation, i.e., STEP AP 242 BO model XML syntax versus the graphical instance model notation.

1.1.6 Document Structure

The overall scope of requirements is partitioned into a set of major sections corresponding to the identified units of functionality. Within a major section, there may be sub-sections. These sub-sections further divide the scope into smaller components of coherent functionality (called “feature”) that interact with each other to realize the functionality of the entire unit.

There is generally a description of requirements and a corresponding instance diagram associated with each section and sub-section of this document. Each instance diagram is followed by a detailed explanation and specific recommendations for the entities used in the instantiation diagram example. The entity listing and explanation is in turn followed by the corresponding XML exchange structure example.

Within a section, diagrams corresponding to sub-sections incrementally build upon one another to finally achieve a complete instance model example that illustrates the entire scope of the unit of functionality.

1.1.7 Instantiation Diagrams

The diagrams are presented using a graphical notation intended to illustrate the instance model.

This notation is not EXPRESS-G and does not illustrate the XML schema; rather it is a graphical illustration of a specific population of a particular instance model of the schema. This notation supports:

- Illustration of entity instances and attribute values (both mapped as XML elements)
- Illustration and identification of referenced entity instances that are either fully illustrated in the current figure, or that refer to another template (if not fully illustrated in the current figure)
- Indication of optional attributes and optional reference entity instances (dashed lines),
- Illustration and identification of groups of functionally related instances (shaded bounding box), showing how XML elements are embedded into each other (the XML elements representing the entity instances placed below are embedded into the XML element representing the entity instance placed above), and

- Identification of specific attribute values (typically string values, may also be enumerated type values or numerical values).

A legend for the diagram notation is shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Object (instance of an EXPRESS ENTITY)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>After the #, an instance number is given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object #1-1</td>
<td>Att1: mandatory attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Att2: optional attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object #1-1</td>
<td>Aggregate type for the definition of the cardinality constraint:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B: Bag (non-ordered and my contain duplicates)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S: Set (non-ordered and may not contain duplicates)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L: List (ordered)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[x : y]: lower size : upper size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>?: unconstrained</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A: Array (indexed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[x : y]: lower index : upper index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object #1-1</td>
<td>Additional constraint on the object: the attribute(s) depicted with ‘*’ have to contain unique values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Currently not used in this document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object #1-1</td>
<td>Derived Information from another object or attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Currently not used in this document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STRING</td>
<td>Simple data types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REAL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type1</td>
<td>User-defined data type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Currently not used in this document</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Enumeration Type

(consists of a limited list of possible values defined for this type)

### Select Type

(is used if a relationship from an object may apply either to Object1 or Object2)

For a better readability, the members of a select type are displayed using the inheritance link (see below) and the mutually exclusive constraint. This has the same semantic as a select type.

*Currently not used in this document*

### Attribute as relationship between two Objects (mandatory or optional).

The circle at the end of the line gives the direction.

Rel1: mandatory relationship

Rel2: optional relationship

### Inheritance from a Supertype to its Subtypes

An Abstract Supertype (ABS) cannot be instanced without one of its non-abstract Subtypes

1: Only one subtype can be instantiated at a time (the subtypes are mutually exclusive).

Per default, all the subtypes may be combined (not supported by XML)

RT: an inherited attribute is re-typed, for example through restriction of its type, length, value range, cardinality, mandatory instead of optional or DERIVED

*Currently not used in this document*
Objects shown under each other within a blue colored square are embedded into each other in XML: here Object2 #2-1 is embedded into Object1 #1-1 as its XML element Rel1.

The templates defined in this document are re-used in other sections. This is the simple way to refer to a template (if the object referenced within the template is implicit, for example the object ‘Classification’ for the template ‘Classification’).

If the template is more complex and the object referenced within the template is shown explicitly, portions of the reused template are displayed within a blue frame.

Alternatively, a template may be reused through adding new XML containments to it.

Table 1: Instance Diagram Notation
1.2 Organizational Framework
These Recommended Practices for AP242 BO Model XML Assembly Structure are developed and supported by a number of "communities", specifically the vendor and user communities devoted to the development and implementation of AP 242 and its associated Business Object Model. This section describes those communities' responsibilities.

1.2.1 Vendor Communities
The CAx-IF will be responsible for the overall organization and development of this document. The CAx-IF will:

- Coordinate creation of the document
- Publish results of testing the AP 242 BO model assembly structure
- Verify the approach of the recommended practices in CAx-IF Test Rounds
- Ensure the consistency with existing CAx-IF recommended practices

The JT-IF will support the document development by:

- Sharing the recommended practices with JT-IF participants
- Verifying the approach of the recommended practices in JT-IF Test Rounds
- Ensuring the consistency with existing JT-IF recommended practices

1.2.2 User Communities
LOTAR is the Aerospace and Defense user community responsible for development of the document. LOTAR will:

- Support the development of the document
- Provide subject matter experts
- Provide A&D requirements and ensure they are fulfilled
- Ensure the consistency with LOTAR standards

JT-WF is the Automotive user community supporting the development of the recommended practices. The JT-WF will:

- Support the development of the document
- Provide subject matter experts
- Provide Automotive requirements and ensure they are fulfilled

1.3 Maintenance of this Document
The creation of this document will be performed using a spiral development process. Approaches will be created by the experts. Those approaches will be vetted among the other experts. When consensus has been reached on a particular approach, it will become a section in the document. The CAx-IF and JT-IF will test those approaches in their forums and feed any issues back to the document developers and experts. Changes to the document will be made based on those issues.

PDES, Inc. and the ProSTEP iViP association will maintain and extend the document as long as it provides utility to the vendor community.
2 Scope

The following are within the scope of this document:

- **Basic PDM Capabilities**
  - Identification concept [Part, Part Version, Part View]
  - User Defined Attributes (non-geometric properties)
  - Mechanical CAD Assembly Structures
  - Component Instances, Placement / Transformations
  - Classification
  - Document Management
- **Geometric and Assembly Validation Properties**
- **AP242 IS BO Model XML File Structure**
  - One XML file for the entire assembly structure („monolithic“ approach)
  - One XML file per assembly node and per leaf node part („nested“ / „fully shattered“ approach)
- **External References to files**
  - STEP Part 21 files (CAx-IF / LOTAR Scope)
  - ISO JT files (JT-IF / JT-WF Scope)
  - AP242 XML files (for „nested“ / „fully shattered“ approach)
  - CAD native files (e.g. Creo, NX, CATIA V5/V6…)

The following are out of scope for this document:

- Kinematics
- Composites
- Advanced PDM Capabilities:
  - Configuration, Effectivity, Activity and Work Management, Approval…
- External Element References (into Part 21 files or between BO Model XML files)

3 Reference to Recommended Practices

For validation purposes, STEP processors shall state which Recommended Practice document and version thereof have been used in the creation of the STEP file. This will not only indicate what information a consumer can expect to find in the file, but even more importantly where to find it in the file.

This shall be done by adding a pre-defined string to the `Documentation` attribute of the `Header` element in the XML file, which is a string (for details see section 4.1.5 below). The value follows a specific pattern well established in Part 21 files:

```
Document Type---Document Name---Document Version---Publication Date
```

The string corresponding to this version of this document is:

```
<Documentation>CAx-IF Rec.Pracs.---AP242 BO Model XML Assembly Structure---1.00---2015-02-13</Documentation>
```
General Postprocessor Recommendation:
If a postprocessor encounters attribute values, or object instantiations different from the ones recommended in this version of the document, a warning shall be recorded. In such case, an additional exchange agreement is supposed to be in place among the parties involved in the data exchange.

4 Basic Concepts

4.1 XML Format Specifics
Annex A describes the guiding principles used for the mapping from EXPRESS to XML. This section gives some additional hints on how to instantiate it.

4.1.1 Character Set
Beside the use of the XML special characters & (for &), ’ (for '), > (for >), &lt; (for <) and &quot; (for ") in elements of the kind STRING, any character (even special) can be used.

Preprocessor Recommendations:
Use of UTF-8 (stated in the first line of the XML file):

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
```

⇒ special characters like ¼ are mapped with their decimal value (here &#x172;).

Concerning the instance identifiers (called ‘uid’) of type xsd:ID, they must start with either a letter or underscore (_) and may contain only letters, digits, underscores (_), hyphens (-), and periods (.). White space is not allowed.

⇒ unlike the instance identifier of ISO STEP Part21, which are restricted to numeric integer values, it is possible to set the uids to some more readable values.

Preprocessor Recommendations:
Use some (even proprietary) convention to ease the human interpretation of the uids, like:

<unique abbreviation of the object type>--<number unique within the XML file>

For example for a PartView instance: pv--4711

4.1.2 Containment vs. Referencing
Containment is preferred over Referencing as far as possible, since it enables the storing of the maximum number of aspects of an object at one single place in the XML file. For example here is a Part with its PartVersion(s), PartView(s), Occurrences(s), Document(s)...:

```xml
<Part uid="p--00000001E0C660">
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="pid--00000001E0C660--id6" id="bolt" idCon-textRef="o--0000000178"/>
  </Id>
  <Name>
    <CharacterString>bolt</CharacterString>
  </Name>
  <PartTypes>
    <ClassString>piece part</ClassString>
  </PartTypes>
  <Versions>
    <PartVersion uid="pv--00000001E0C660--id6">
      <Id>
```

© CAx Implementor Forum  http://www.cax-if.de/  http://www.cax-if.org/
On the other hand, referenced instances would be spread over all the XML file. Containment is used for context dependent objects which cannot exist without the container object. Reference is used for objects that can exist on their own; they may be reference multiple times (reused), which avoids duplication of data.

The type of all referenced instances (defined as "cmn:Reference") and contained instances can be validated by the XSD.

### 4.1.3 Root Objects and DataContainer

All the entities not being declared as contained in any XML element are defined as a subtype of cmn:BaseRootObject. Otherwise they are defined as a subtype of cmn:BaseObject.

Each Root Object is defined as an element of the so-called AP242DataContainer (defined as a subtype of cmn:DataContainer).

An XML file may have one or many AP242DataContainers.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:**

Define all data into one single AP242DataContainer.

The order of the root objects is not critical (since defined as xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"), but the order of the attributes and containments within each object is strictly defined in the BO Model XSD (as xsd:sequence). In case of inheritance, the ordering of the attributes is: first the attributes of the top level supertype, then the attributes of the next level supertype, etc... and at the end, the attributes of the instantiated subtype.

### 4.1.4 Subtyping

If a subtype shall be instantiated, the top-level supertype defined in the EXPRESS and XML schema shall be instantiated, followed by a subtyping clause xsi:type. For example:

```xml
<GeometricRepresentation uid="egm--1" xsi:type="n0:ComposedGeometricModel">
4.1.5 Header object

**Preprocessor Recommendations:**

The header is mandatory and shall contain at least the following information:

- **Name:** name of the XML file
- **TimeStamp:** creation (or last modification date) of the XML file
- **Organization.Name:** name of the sending organization. Use the same unique ID conventions as for the Id of the template “Organization”
- **PreprocessorVersion:** name and release of the Preprocessor
- **OriginatingSystem:** name and release of the originating system
- **Documentation:** version of the Recommended Practices used to implement the preprocessor

Here is an example:

```xml
<Header xmlns="">
  <Name>as1.stpx</Name>
  <TimeStamp>2014-03-25T09:54:06Z</TimeStamp>
  <Organization>
    <Name>mercedes-benz.com</Name>
  </Organization>
  <PreprocessorVersion>T-Systems International GmbH COM/FOX V5.5.2</PreprocessorVersion>
  <OriginatingSystem>CATIA V5R19</OriginatingSystem>
  <Documentation>CAx-IF Rec.Pracs.---AP242 BO Model XML Assembly Structure---0.95---2015-02-12</Documentation>
</Header>
```

**Remarks:**

- The organization mentioned in the header is not necessarily redundant with the one mentioned in ExchangeContext.IdentificationContext: for example if a tier-1 supplier forwards data from its customer to an tier-2 supplier, forwarding the identifiers from the customer, the IdentificationContext will be the one of the customer while the organization in the header will be the tier-1 supplier
- The version of the AP242 BO Model XSD doesn’t need to be defined here, since it is already defined in the top line of the XML file (see next section).

4.1.6 XML context tagging

Using the appropriate scoping, lots of XML context tagging may be avoided.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:**

Use the following definition to enclose all schema definitions needed by the BO Model XML file:

```xml
<n0:Uos xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
xmlns:n0="http://standards.iso.org/iso/ts/10303/-3001/-ed-1/tech/xml-schema/bo_model"
xmlns:cmn="http://standards.iso.org/iso/ts/10303/-3000/-ed-1/tech/xml-schema/common"
...
Avoid defining namespaces in the DataContainer.

The only case within the data where context tagging is needed is 'n0' for the subtype clauses like xsi:type="n0:ComposedGeometricModel".

### 4.1.7 Schema version and document version identifications

The name of the schema that an AP242 BO Model XML file shall be compliant to shall be listed at the beginning of the uos element.

**EXAMPLE:** To indicate the AP242 BO model XML schema, version 1.0, the following URL is used:

```xml
```

### 4.1.8 Dates

Unlike in the EXPRESS schema definition of DateTimeString, the time is not optional in XML using xsd:dateTime.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:**

If not available, set the time to T00:00:00, for example: 2010-08-19T00:00:00

### 4.1.9 STEP BO Model XML File Extensions

It was agreed by implementors and users alike that the default file extension "*.xml" is too generic, since there are so many XML files for a wide variety of purposes and applications already using the extension. Since STEP BO Model XML files oftentimes are process-relevant, they should be easily identifiable, and it should be possible to associate a default handling application.

Since "*.stp" shall remain reserved for STEP Part 21 files and the previously proposed "*.stpxml" seemed to ungainly, the CAx-IF agreed to consistently use the following file extensions:

- "*.stpx" – for STEP (AP209, AP242,…) BO Model XML files
- "*.stpxZ" – for compressed STEP BO Model XML files

The compression of STEP files – Part 21 as well as BO Model XML – is defined in the CAx-IF Recommended Practices for STEP File Compression (see Annex C).

### 4.2 Rules for Attribute Cardinality

#### 4.2.1 Entities and Attributes not supported by the Preprocessor

The guidance provided in this section reuses the "General Information" section of the PDM Schema Usage Guide V4.3, but adds recommendations for derived attributes and for mandatory numerical attributes.

For various reasons, there may be entities that cannot be completely exported by a preprocessor. For example, an application may not maintain all the information that is mandatory for data exchange according to this specification. Or, the information is maintained by a
sending system, but it will for some reasons not be included in the data exchange file. The preprocessor shall provide values for all mandatory attributes in an exchange file.

For mandatory string-value attributes, special values shall be used to further indicate the reason why no real data is provided according to the following convention:

- For string-value attributes: empty string `<tag></tag>` or `<tag/>` indicates user data managed by the sending system, but not provided for data exchange.
- For string-value attributes: string `<tag>/NULL</tag>` indicates user data in a mandatory attribute that is not managed by the sending system or currently not known.
- For string-value attributes: string `<tag>/ANY</tag>` indicates that the value – mandatory or optional - may be computed by the target system (for example PartVersion.Id if the assembly structure of the source system stores only the part number of the component and computes the right PartVersion at runtime).
- For string-value attributes: string `<tag>/DUMMY</tag>` indicates that an entity as a whole is not supported by a pre-processor, but is mandatory according to the XML Schema => all its mandatory string attributes are set to /DUMMY. This may apply for example to DateAndPersonOrganization.PersonOrOrganization.

Accordingly, it is not recommended to use the empty string or the default strings ‘/ANY’, ‘/DUMMY’ and ‘/NULL’ as valid user data.

For mandatory INTEGER, REAL or NUMBER attributes, 2147483647 (MAX_LONG) indicates user data in a mandatory attribute that is not managed by the sending system or currently not known.

For mandatory Date attributes, 1970-01-01T00:00:00 indicates user data in a mandatory attribute that is not managed by the sending system or currently not known.

Accordingly, it is not recommended to use 2147483647 or 1970-01-01T00:00:00 as valid user data. Dates older or newer than 1970-01-01T00:00:00 shall be interpreted as user data.

For further mandatory non-string value attributes, these recommended practices do not provide further guidance.

If an optional attribute is not instantiated, the corresponding element shall be completely removed from the physical file. Though not recommended, it is also valid to list the element start and end tags without providing any value.

4.2.2 Entities and Attributes not supported by the Postprocessor

The guidance provided in this section corresponds with the “General Information” section of the PDM Schema Usage Guide V4.3.

For various reasons, there may be entities that cannot be completely imported by a postprocessor. The postprocessor translator implementation may not support the import of the entity. Or, the receiving system may not maintain the information that is carried by an entity or attribute, or it may require specific attribute values that are not present in the input data.

The names of entities and attributes not imported should be recorded in a history log file together with a reason. Entities and attributes not supported by the receiving system shall not cause a system failure. The minimum acceptable behavior shall be to ignore the unsupported constructs gracefully.

4.2.3 Unspecified and Optional Attribute Values

The guidance provided in this section corresponds with the “General Information” section of the PDM Schema Usage Guide V4.3.
Optional attributes without specific recommended values, such as the description attribute, are available on many entities in the AP242 BO Model. The following general recommendation for the use of this type of attribute is given:

**Preprocessor** - First, follow the usage guide as much as is possible. If some specific common harmonized user requirement has been documented in the usage guide for the type of attribute, adapt this requirement to the attributes in question (i.e., map the standard into your domain). If no specific common harmonized user requirement has been documented in the usage guide, in general, such an optional attribute should not be instantiated. However, these attributes may be used in some bilateral agreements between exchange partners.

**Postprocessor** - Any optional attribute with no specific mapping specified can, in general, not be specifically interpreted in an interoperable way. While these types of attributes are in general not recommended to be instantiated, the postprocessor should gracefully handle any data that is exchanged using these attributes. A robust, interoperable AP242 BO Model postprocessor will generally provide user access to also these values.

### 4.2.4 Derived Attributes

The guidance provided in this section corresponds with the “General Information” section of the PDM Schema Usage Guide V4.3.

In general, derived attributes are not covered by this recommended practices document. This is consistent with the STEP part 21 and part 28 specifications where derived attributes are not represented in an exchange file. This document does not include cases of derived attributes where special attention is required.

### 4.3 Uniqueness of Identifiers

Two types of identifiers are distinguished:

1) **Uid-identifier**, which is assigned to each element in the XML-file and which plays the same role as the instance identifier in ISO 10303-21 files. This identifier shall be unique within a single file; they are not unique across several physical files, even though such files may form a consistent data package.

2) **User-defined identifiers** that are provided as part of the product data. These recommended practices do not require such identifier strings to be unique, neither globally nor within a single physical file. Thus, in the concurrent management of internal and external identifiers in a database, duplicate identifiers may occur.

**NOTE:** To ensure uniqueness of identification the EXPRESS schema of the AP242 BO Model requires the combination of the values of the attributes id, role and identificationContext of instances of entity Identifier to be unique. See 4.6.6 for recommendations of instantiating entity Identifier in general; additional guidance may be given in the sections of entities that have attributes of type Identifier.

### 4.4 Project Specific Values

The guidance provided in this section corresponds with the “General Information” section of the PDM Schema Usage Guide V4.3.

Attribute values recommended in this usage guide shall be supported by systems that conform to the AP242 BO Model. Other values negotiated between exchange partners in specific projects may be used where the interpretation of their meaning does not contradict definitions provided in this usage guide. However, these agreements will generally not lead to interoperable solutions.
4.5 Blanks in String Values
The guidance provided in this section corresponds with the “General Information” section of the PDM Schema Usage Guide V4.3.

All white space within the XML tag delimiters of a STRING value shall be considered valid user data, that is, also leading and trailing blanks are valid user data.

4.6 Basic Building Blocks
The objective of this chapter is to define the basic templates that will be reused in the representation of complex concepts (chapter 4.6.11 and following).

4.6.1 Template “ExchangeContext”
The ExchangeContext entity specifies a default context for the identifications and descriptions, a default language and a default unit relevant for a defined context.

The Description provides the context of the exchange.

The DefaultLanguage sets the default language used in the exchanged file if no specific language information is provided.

The DefaultUnit sets the default unit to be used for the exchanged file if no specific unit is provided.

The IdentificationContext must be set and contains the organization managing the different id and description if no specific organization is provided.

The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes

![Diagram of ExchangeContext]

**Figure 1: Template “ExchangeContext”**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DefaultLanguage</td>
<td>OPTIONAL Language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DefaultUnit</td>
<td>OPTIONAL Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IdentificationContext</td>
<td>OPTIONAL IdentificationContextSelect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 2: “ExchangeContext” Attributes**
Attribute recommendation

- The **Description** attribute is the text providing information on the exchange context. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Description” template (see 4.6.7).

- The **DefaultLanguage** attribute is the set of text by which the default language is known. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use xsd:language type. For more details, refer to chapter 0.

- The **DefaultUnit** attribute characterizes a default unit. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Unit” template (see 4.6.3).

- The **IdentificationContext** attribute specifies a default organization. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Organization” template (see 4.6.2).

Remark: Just as in the AP242 Specification, the XSD does not restrict the values in DefaultLanguage

**Preprocessor Recommendations**: All preprocessors should provide a unique ExchangeContext.

**Postprocessor Recommendations**:

- If no context is given for an Identifier the ExchangeContext.IdentificationContext should be used.

- If no unit is given the ExchangeContext.DefaultUnit should be used (like in simplified positioning representation of assembly structure, see chapter 7.3.1).

- If no language is given for names or descriptions, the DefaultLanguage should be used.

**Related Entities**: There are no specific related entities.

The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```xml
<ExchangeContext uid="ec--000000001"
  <DefaultLanguage>en-US</DefaultLanguage>
  <DefaultUnit uidRef="u--000000002"/>
  <Description>
    <CharacterString>AP242 BO Model XML Assembly Structure exchange</CharacterString>
    <Description>
      <IdentificationContext uidRef="o--000000178"/>
    </IdentificationContext>
  </Description>
  <Unit uid="u--000000002">
    <Kind>
      <ClassString>SI system</ClassString>
    </Kind>
    <Name>
      <ClassString>metre</ClassString>
    </Name>
    <Prefix>
      <ClassString>milli</ClassString>
    </Prefix>
  </Unit>
</Organization uid="o--000000178">
```
In the same way as in section 13.1.1 of the PDM Schema Usage Guide V4.3, the Organization entity represents a group of people (e.g., companies, countries, etc.).

The Id is very important providing unique identification to the organization or company; this attribute should be populated with unique data.

The Name attribute should contain the common nomenclature of the organization.

The OrganizationTypes attribute should contain a characterization of the type of the organization.

The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes

```
<Organization id="mercedes-benz.com">
  <Id>mercedes-benz.com</Id>
  <Name>
    <CharacterString>Mercedes-Benz</CharacterString>
  </Name>
  <OrganizationTypes>
    <ClassString>company</ClassString>
  </OrganizationTypes>
</Organization>
```

**4.6.2 Template “Organization”**

The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes
### Attribute recommendation

- **The Id attribute** is the identifier that distinguishes the organization. Use `xml:string` type.

- **The Name attribute** is the label by which the organization is known. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "Description" template (see 4.6.7).

- **The OrganizationTypes attribute** characterizes the type of organization. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use `ClassString` if one of the values below is used, otherwise use "Class" template (see 4.6.4). According to the ISO AP242 Specification, where applicable, the following values shall be used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OrganizationTypes</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'company'</td>
<td>The organizationTypes specifies that the Organization is a company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'department'</td>
<td>The organizationTypes specifies that the Organization is a department</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'plant'</td>
<td>The organizationTypes specifies that the Organization is a plant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

#### Preprocessor Recommendations: All preprocessors should provide a unique organization id to eliminate ambiguities where organizations may have the same names. If the intended domain for the data is large, the reader is referred to ISO/IEC 8824-1, which can provide some guidance on creating unique identifiers. If appropriate, a URL-like convention for the organization identifier may be used, e.g., cax-if.org. A unique string obtained under ISO/IEC 8824-1 can be used as, or prefixed to, the organization identifier. For example, if the organization typically used an identifier of "93699" and the unique string were "USA", the unique value of the organization id would be "USA93699". If available and appropriate, the following values should be used to describe the organization type:

- ‘company’ to indicate a business entity;
- ‘department’ to indicate an organizational group within a company;
- ‘plant’ to indicate that the organization is a plant.
**Postprocessor Recommendations:** All postprocessors should make use of any provided information in the id attribute to eliminate ambiguities where organizations may have the same name.

**Related Entities:** There are no specific related entities.

**The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)**

```xml
<Organization uid="o--000000178">
  <Id id="mercedes-benz.com"/>
  <Name>
    <CharacterString>Mercedes-Benz</CharacterString>
  </Name>
  <OrganizationTypes>
    <ClassString>company</ClassString>
  </OrganizationTypes>
</Organization>
```

4.6.3 Template “Unit”

This entity is a quantity chosen as a standard in terms of which other quantities may be expressed. The types of units supported are SI units as well as derived or conversion based units as defined in ISO 10303-41. See Annex E for the recommendation of the Units definition.

The **Name** provides the type of the unit.

The **Kind** represents the type of system used.

The **Prefix** is the ratio of the unit.

**The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes**

![Diagram of Unit entity]

**Figure 3: Template “Unit”**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kind</td>
<td>OPTIONAL ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prefix</td>
<td>OPTIONAL ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantity</td>
<td>OPTIONAL ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 4: "Unit" Attributes**
**Attribute recommendations**

- The **Name** attribute is the text defining the type of the unit. Use ClassString type.

- The **Kind** attribute is the type of system used. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use ClassString if one of the values below is used, otherwise use “Class” template (see 4.6.4). According to the ISO AP242 Specification, when applicable the ‘SI System’ value should be used.


- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:** None specified.

**Postprocessor Recommendations:** None specified.

**Related Entities:** There are no specific related entities.

**The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)**

```xml
[Unit uid="u--000000002"]
  <Kind>
    <ClassString>SI system</ClassString>
  </Kind>
  <Name>
    <ClassString>metre</ClassString>
  </Name>
  <Prefix>
    <ClassString>milli</ClassString>
  </Prefix>
</Unit>
```

**4.6.4 Template “Class”**

This entity is a classification which characterizes all objects of the same kind.

The **Id** provides a unique identification to the classification; this attribute must be populated with unique data.

The **Description** attribute should contain the textual information concerning the class.

The **DefinedIn** attribute should reference a specific externally defined set of value.

**The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes**
**Figure 4: Template “Class”**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClassAttribute: OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ClassAttribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DefinedIn: OPTIONAL ExternalClassSystem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Description: OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Id: Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SetMembership: OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SetMembership</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SubsetMember: OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SubsetMember</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VersionId: OPTIONAL Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ActivityAssignment: OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ApprovalAssignment: OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DateTimeAssignment: OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DocumentAssignment: OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EffectivityAssignment: OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EffectivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EventAssignment: OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FrozenAssignment: OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of FrozenAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>InformationUsageRightAssignment: OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment: OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SuppliedObjectRelationship: OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TimeIntervalAssignment: OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 5: “Class” Attributes*
Attribute recommendation

- The **Id** attribute is the identifier that distinguishes the class. Use `xml:string` type.
- The **Description** attribute is the text by which the class is described. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Description” template (see 4.6.7).
- The **DefinedIn** attribute specifies where is defined the type represented by the Id. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Reference to an ExternalClass-System element.
- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source</td>
<td>OPTIONAL ExternalSourceSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateAndPersonAssign</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateTimeAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EffectivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6: "ExternalClassSystem" Attributes

Attribute recommendation

- The **Description** attribute is the text by which the external system is described. The value of this attribute need not be specified. "Description" template (see 4.6.7).
- The **Id** attribute is the identifier that distinguishes the external system. Use “Identifier” template (see 4.6.6).
- The **Source** attribute specifies where the external system is located. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use IdentifierString type.
- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

Preprocessor Recommendations: All preprocessors should provide unique class ids.

The ExternalClassSystem should be used when the Class.id value is not commonly agreed by the AP242 specification or recommended practices. The entity allows specifying all the values supported by the preprocessor and among them, those referenced by the exchanged assembly structure.
Postprocessor Recommendations: None specified.
Related Entities: There are no specific related entities.

The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```
<ExternalClassSystem uid="ecs--fdf">
  <id>
    <Identifier uid="fdf--filedataformat-id1" id="file data format" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
  </id>
</ExternalClassSystem>
<Class uid="fdf--CATIAV4">
  <DefinedIn uidRef="ecs--fdf"/>
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="fdf--CATIAV4--id1" id="CATIA V4" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
  </Id>
</Class>
<Class uid="fdf--CATIAV5">
  <DefinedIn uidRef="ecs--fdf"/>
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="fdf--CATIAV5--id1" id="CATIA V5" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
  </Id>
</Class>
<Class uid="fdf--CGR">
  <DefinedIn uidRef="ecs--fdf"/>
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="fdf--CGR--id1" id="CGR" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
  </Id>
</Class>
```

4.6.5 Template “Classification”
This entity permits the attachment of a Class to one or more objects.
The Role provides the meaning of the association.
The Class attribute provides the classification information.

The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes

![Diagram of Classification]

Figure 5: Template "Classification"
### Attribute recommendation

- **The Class** attribute is the reference to the classification. Use ClassString if the value is recommended within this document (for example for Filecontent.GeometryTypes), otherwise use “Class” template (see 4.6.4).

- **The Role** attribute is the text that defines the role of the association of the class to an object. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Description” template (see 4.6.7).

- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:** When applicable, the following values shall be used for the attribute Role:

- ‘electromagnetic compatibility’: The classification categorizes the classified element in respect of its ability to comply with requirements concerning electromagnetic interference

- ‘environmental conditions’: The classification categorizes the classified element with respect to its ability to comply with environmental impact requirements.

**Postprocessor Recommendations:** None specified.

**Related Entities:** There are no specific related entities.

### The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```
<Classification uid="vda--SpecifiedReference">
  <Class>
    <ClassString>specified reference</ClassString>
  </Class>
</Classification>
```
4.6.6 Template “Identifier”

The identifier supports the ability to uniquely identify an object via a combination of three criteria: id, role and context.

The **id** is very important providing unique identification to the related object.

The **idRoleRef** attribute should contain the role of the identification.

The **idContextRef** attribute must be set and contain the organization managing the id.

The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes

![Diagram of Identifier Template]

**Figure 6: Template "Identifier"**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ContractAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ContractAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateTimeAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EffectivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IdentifierRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of IdentifierRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>id</td>
<td>OPTIONAL String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idRoleRef</td>
<td>OPTIONAL String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idContextRef</td>
<td>OPTIONAL String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 8: "Identifier" Attributes**
Attribute recommendation

- The `id` attribute is the text that represents an identifying name or code. Use IdentifierString type.

- The `idRoleRef` attribute is the text that defines the role of the identifier. Use ClassString type and the following value:
  - ‘identification information’: the id identifies the object

- The `idContextRef` attribute is the context within which the Identifier has been created and is unique. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Organization” template (see 4.6.2).

- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

Preprocessor Recommendations: All preprocessors should ensure the unicity of the combination of id, idRoleRef and idContextRef.

In the XML format, it is possible to duplicate the identification in the Id.id attribute and in the Identifier.id attribute. This usage is not recommended since it is not possible in the EXPRESS definition of the AP242 BO Model. All preprocessors must avoid it. The Id.id shall only be used in special cases like Organization.Id.

Postprocessor Recommendations: None specified.

Related Entities: There are no specific related entities.

The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```xml
<Organization uid="o--000000178">
  <Id id="mercedes-benz.com"/>
  <Name>
    <CharacterString>Mercedes-Benz</CharacterString>
  </Name>
  <OrganizationTypes>
    <ClassString>company</ClassString>
  </OrganizationTypes>
</Organization>
<Part uid="p--0000000001E60C660">
  <Identifier uid="pid--000000001E60C660--id6" id="bolt" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
  <Id/>
  ...
</Part>
```

4.6.7 Template “Description”

In the context of this recommended practice, all the descriptions shall be set with the CharacterString type.

To support PDM environments, multi-language support and other capabilities built on the description, the full definition of the “Description” template will have to be done.
4.6.8 Template “ViewContext”

In the same way than in section 1.1.2.4 of the PDM Schema Usage Guide V4.3, the ViewContext entity identifies a universe suitable for the description of parts.

The Description provides further information about the type of view defined. The ApplicationDomain attribute contains the application domain information. The LifeCycleStage attribute contains the life cycle stage information.

The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes

![Diagram of ViewContext entity]

**Figure 7: Template "ViewContext"

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ApplicationDomain</td>
<td>ApplicationDomainSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LifeCycleStage</td>
<td>LifeCycleStageSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 9: "ViewContext" Attributes**

**Attribute recommendations**

- The **Description** attribute is the text by which the type is described. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Description” template (see 4.6.7).
- The **ApplicationDomain** attribute is the text representing the application domain. Use ProxyString type.
- The **LifeCycleStage** attribute is the text representing the life cycle stage. Use ProxyString type.
- Other attributes than these are not covered by the Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:** The Description attribute provides a distinction on the type of view on a part version ('part definition') from one of a document version ('digital document definition', 'physical document definition'). This attribute may also indicate other types of definitions: e.g., functional, or spatial and/or zonal.
Recommended values for ApplicationDomain include 'assembly study', 'digital mock-up', 'electrical design', 'mechanical design', 'preliminary design', 'process planning', 'product support' and 'not specific'.

Recommended values for LifeCycleStage include 'design', 'manufacturing', 'support', 'recycling' and 'not specific'.

All preprocessors should ensure that the combinations of the ApplicationDomain and the LifeCycleStage are unique.

**Postprocessor Recommendations:** Postprocessors should interpret the value of the description attribute as a type distinction between various definitions of parts and documents. The LifeCycleStage attribute value may be interpreted as the relevant viewpoint from which the data is valid.

**Related Entities:** There are no specific related entities.

The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```xml
<ViewContext uid="vc-000000781">
  <ApplicationDomain>
    <ProxyString>mechanical design</ProxyString>
  </ApplicationDomain>
  <LifeCycleStage>
    <ProxyString>design</ProxyString>
  </LifeCycleStage>
</ViewContext>
```

4.6.9 Template “NumericalValue”

The NumericalValue is a subtype of ValueWithUnit representing a textual definition and a numerical value associated to a Unit type.

The Definition provides textual information on the property.

The Name provides the identification of the property.

The Unit specifies in which the ValueComponent is expressed.

The ValueComponent is the quantity.

The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes

![Image of NumericalValue template]

Figure 8: Template "NumericalValue"
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>PropertyDefinitionSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeterminationMethod</td>
<td>OPTIONAL ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qualifications</td>
<td>OPTIONAL MeasureQualification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateTimeAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EffectivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FrozenAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of FrozenAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProjectAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ProjectAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyValueRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyValueRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SignificantDigits</td>
<td>Optional Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit</td>
<td>UnitSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ValueComponent</td>
<td>Double</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ValueContext</td>
<td>OPTIONAL NumericalContext</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 10: "NumericalValue" Attributes**

**Attribute recommendations**

- The **Definition** attribute is the text by which the property is described. In the case of User Defined attributes (see chapter 12), use "PropertyDefinition" template (see 12.2), otherwise use PropertyDefinitionString type.

- The **Name** attribute is the text by which the property is known. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "Description" template (see 4.6.7).

- The **Unit** attribute is the Unit of the expressed value. Use "Unit" template (see 4.6.3).

- The **ValueComponent** attribute is the Real representing the quantity.

- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:** None specified.

**Postprocessor Recommendations:** None specified.

**Related Entities:** There are no specific related entities.
The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```xml
<Unit uid="u--000000003">
  <Kind>
    <ClassString>SI system</ClassString>
  </Kind>
  <Name>
    <ClassString>byte</ClassString>
  </Name>
  <Prefix>
    <ClassString>kilo</ClassString>
  </Prefix>
</Unit>

<File xsi:type="n1:DigitalFile" uid="df--000000088">
  <FileSize xsi:type="n0:NumericalValue">
    <Definition>
      <PropertyDefinitionString>Document size</PropertyDefinitionString>
    </Definition>
    <Name>
      <CharacterString>Document parameters</CharacterString>
    </Name>
    <Unit uidRef="u--000000003"></Unit>
    <ValueComponent>46</ValueComponent>
  </FileSize>
</File>
```

4.6.10 Template “StringValue”

The `StringValue` is a subtype of `PropertyValue` representing a textual definition and a text value.

The `Definition` provides textual information on the property.

The `Name` provides the identification of the property.

The `ValueComponent` is the representation of the value.

The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes

![Diagram of StringValue template]

Figure 9: Template “StringValue”
### Attribute recommendations

- **The Definition** attribute is the text by which the property is described. In the case of User Defined attributes (see chapter 12), use “PropertyDefinition” template (see 12.2), otherwise use PropertyDefinitionString type.

- **The Name** attribute is the text by which the property is known. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use of “Description” template (see 4.6.7).

- **The ValueComponent** attribute is the text representing the value. Use of “Description” template (see 4.6.7).

- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:** None specified.

**Postprocessor Recommendations:** None specified.

**Related Entities:** There are no specific related entities.

The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)
4.6.11 Template “DateTime”

The entity DateTimeAssignment permits the attachment of a DateTimeString to one or more objects.

The Role provides the meaning of the assignment.

The AssignedDate attribute provides date and time information.

The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AssignedDate</td>
<td>Xsd:dateTime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>OPTIONAL Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role</td>
<td>ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 10: Template "DateTime"
**Table 12:** "DateTime" Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AssignmentObjectRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of AssignmentObjectRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConditionAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ConditionAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateTimeAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EffectivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FrozenAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of FrozenAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyValueRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyValueRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attribute recommendations**

- **The Role attribute** is the text that defines the meaning of the association of the date and time to an object. Use ClassString for the recommended value, otherwise use “Class” template (see 4.6.4).

- **The AssignedDate attribute** is the text representing the date and time information. Use DateTimeString type.

- Other attributes than these are not covered by the Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:** The representation of DateTimeString shall respect ISO 8601. In the BO Model definition of DateTimeString type it is mandatory to represent the date, whereas the time is optional, but with the xsd:dateTime type both date and time are mandatory. It is recommended to set the time with the following default value: YYYY-MM-DDT00:00:00.

When applicable, the following values shall be used for the attribute Role:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'classification date'</td>
<td>the specified object is classified at the given date and time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'creation'</td>
<td>the referenced object was created at the given date and time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'installation'</td>
<td>the referenced object was mounted in a product at the given date and time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'lock'</td>
<td>the specified object is locked in the underlying legacy system since the given date and time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'production'</td>
<td>the referenced object was produced at the given date and time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'registration'</td>
<td>the referenced object was determined at the given date and time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'update'</td>
<td>the referenced object was altered at the given date and time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Postprocessor Recommendations: Postprocessors should interpret the value of the AssignedDate attribute according to ISO 8601

Related Entities: There are no specific related entities.

The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```xml
<TimeAssignment uid="tma--0000000017D374A0--id1">
  <AssignedTime>2014-10-16T09:08:07</AssignedTime>
  <Role>
    <ClassString>creation</ClassString>
  </Role>
</TimeAssignment>
```

4.6.12 Template “Approval”

The entity ApprovalAssignment allows the attachment of an Approval to one or more objects.

The entity Approval represents a statement made by technical personnel or management personnel whether certain requirements are met.

The Description provides further information about the approval.

The Status attribute provides a user interpretable designation of the level of acceptance.

The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AssignedApproval</td>
<td>Approval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 13: "ApprovalAssignment" Attributes

**Attribute recommendations**

- The **AssignedApproval** attribute is the reference to the Approval entity.
- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

**Preprocessor Recommendations**: None specified.

**Postprocessor Recommendations**: None specified.

**Related Entities**: There are no specific related entities.
Table 14: “Approval” Attributes

**Attribute recommendations**

- The **Status** attribute is the text representing a user interpretable designation of the level of acceptance. Use ClassString for the recommended value, otherwise use “Class” template (see 4.6.4).

- The **Description** attribute is the text by which the approval is described. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Description” template (see 4.6.7).

- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:** When applicable, the following values shall be used for the attribute Status:

- ‘in progress’
- ‘approved’
- ‘approved with comments’
- ‘not approved’.

**Postprocessor Recommendations:** None specified.

**Related Entities:** There are no specific related entities.

The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

...<ApprovalAssignment uid="appas--0000000017D374A0--id1">
  <AssignedApproval uidRef="app--inprogress"/>
</ApprovalAssignment>
...

<Approval uid="app--inprogress">
  <Description>
    <CharacterString>disposition</CharacterString>
  </Description>
</Approval>
4.6.13 Template “Person”
The entity **Person** represents an individual human being.
The **Id** attribute provides a unique identification of the person.
The **FirstName** attribute provides the first name of the person.
The **LastName** attribute provides the last name of the person.

The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes

![Diagram of Person entity](image)

**Figure 12: Template “Person”**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Person</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FirstName</td>
<td>OPTIONAL String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>OPTIONAL Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LastName</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MiddleNames</td>
<td>OPTIONAL LIST[1:?] of String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PrefixTitles</td>
<td>OPTIONAL LIST[1:?] of String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SameAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ProxySelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SuffixTitles</td>
<td>OPTIONAL LIST[1:?] of String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateTimeAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ATTRIBUTE Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FrozenAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of FrozenAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyValueRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyValueRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WorkRequestAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of WorkRequestAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 15: "Person" Attributes

**Attribute recommendations**

- **The FirstName attribute** is the text by which the human being is known. The value of this attribute need not be specified.

- **The Id attribute** is the identifier that distinguishes the person. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "Identifier" template (see 4.6.6).

- **The LastName attribute** is the text by which the human being is known.

- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:** None specified.

**Postprocessor Recommendations:** None specified.

**Related Entities:** There are no specific related entities.

---

#### The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```xml
<Person uid="pers--Mustermann">
  <FirstName>Max</FirstName>
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="pers--Mustermann--1" id="4711" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
  </Id>
  <LastName>Mustermann</LastName>
</Person>
```

**4.6.14 Template “PersonInOrganization”**

The entity OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment allows the attachment of a PersonInOrganization to one or more objects.

The Role attribute specifies the responsibility of the assigned person.

The entity PersonInOrganization represents the membership of a person in an organization with a specific role.
The **AssociatedPerson** is a reference to the person.

The **AssociatedOrganization** is a reference to the organization.

The **Id** provides a unique identification to the PersonInOrganization.

The **PersonRole** attribute specifies the role of the person inside the organization.

### The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes

![Diagram of PersonInOrganization](image)

#### Figure 13: Template “PersonInOrganization”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AssignedPersonOrOrganization</td>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>Id</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© CAX Implementor Forum  
http://www.cax-if.de/  
http://www.cax-if.org/
### Table 16: "OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment" Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Role</td>
<td>ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AssignmentObjectRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of AssignmentObjectRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConditionAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ConditionAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateTimeAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EffectivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FrozenAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of FrozenAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganiz-</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ationAssignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyValueRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyValueRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Attribute recommendations

- The **AssignedPersonOrOrganization** attribute defines the person inside an organization with a reference to the PersonInOrganization entity.

- The **Role** attribute is the text describing the responsibility of the person. Use ClassString for the recommended value, otherwise use "Class" template (see 4.6.4).

- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

#### Preprocessor Recommendations:

When applicable, the following values shall be used for the attribute Role:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'author'</td>
<td>The author holds the copyright</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'classification officer'</td>
<td>The assigned person or organization is formally responsible for the classification of the referenced object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'creator'</td>
<td>The referenced object has been created by the assigned person or organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'custodian'</td>
<td>The assigned person or organization is responsible for the existence and integrity of the referenced object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'customer'</td>
<td>The assigned person or organization acts as a purchaser or consumer of the referenced object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Role | Explanation
--- | ---
'design supplier' | The assigned person or organization is the one who delivers the data describing the referenced object
'editor' | One or more attributes have been modified by the assigned person or organization
'id owner' | The assigned person or organization is the one responsible for the designation of an identifier
'location' | The assigned organization is the place where the referenced object can be found or where it takes place
'locked by' | The assigned person that currently locks the associated object in the underlying legacy system
'manufacturer' | The assigned person or organization is the one who produces the actual (physical) object
'owner' | The assigned person or organization owns the referenced object, and has final say over its disposition and any changes to it
'read access' | The assigned person or organization neither has the right to modify any attributes of the referenced object, nor to modify, create or delete objects that are attached directly or indirectly to the referenced object
'supplier' | The assigned person or organization is the one who delivers the actual (physical) object (e.g., a dealer)
'wholesaler' | The assigned person or organization the one who is in the sales chain between the manufacturer and the supplier
'write access' | The assigned person or organization has the right to modify the attributes of the referenced object, as well as to modify, create, or delete objects that are attached directly or indirectly to the referenced object

**Postprocessor Recommendations:** None specified.

**Related Entities:** There are no specific related entities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>PersonInOrganization</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AssociatedOrganization</td>
<td></td>
<td>Organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AssociatedPerson</td>
<td></td>
<td>Person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td></td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td></td>
<td>Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PersonRole</td>
<td></td>
<td>ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityAssignment</td>
<td></td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
<td></td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AddressAssignment</td>
<td></td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of AddressAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td></td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ContractAssignment</td>
<td></td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ContractAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE 17: "PersonInOrganization" Attributes

**Attribute recommendations**

- The *AssociatedPerson* attribute defines the person. Use “Person” template (see 4.6.13).
- The *AssociatedOrganization* attribute defines the organization. Use “Organization” template (see 4.6.2).
- The *Id* attribute is the identification of the entity. Use “Identifier” template (see 4.6.6).
- The *PersonRole* attribute is the text describing the role. Use ClassString.
- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:** None specified.

**Postprocessor Recommendations:**

When applicable, the following values shall be used for the attribute Role:

- ‘employee’: The associated person is a member of kind ‘employee’ of the associated organization.

**Related Entities:** There are no specific related entities.

**The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)**

```xml
...  
<OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment uid="poa--0000000017D374A0-id1">
  <AssignedPersonOrOrganization uidRef="pio--005-TPEVD-Mustermann"/>
  <Role>
    <ClassString>creator</ClassString>
  </Role>
</OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment>
...  
```
5 Part Identification and Classification

The scope of this section corresponds to sections 1 and 2 of the PDM Schema Usage Guide V4.3.

The AP242 BO Model manages industrial products as Parts. An AP242 BO Model conformant data exchange shall include at least one element of type Part.

Identification of Parts in the AP242 BO Model uses three concepts:

- Part Master Identification,
- Context Information, and
- Type Classification.

Part master identification consists of the base part number, a unique part version identification, and – optionally – the identification of a view definition that describes application domain, lifecycle stage and property values. Details are specified in 5.1.

Context information provides scope and environment of interpretation of product identification information. Context information may be given locally, that is, for a single XML element, such as, for Parts using ViewContext (see PartView in 5.1.3 and the “ViewContext” template in 4.6.8), or globally for the entire physical file using the element ExchangeContext for stating the organization that owns all identifiers in the data set (see template in 4.6.1). For a summary of all context mechanisms, see 4.1.6.

For Part classification the AP242 BO Model distinguishes the following two approaches:

- Type classification
  - An identified Part may be placed into one or several of the following categories: 'piece part', 'product', 'software', 'assembly', 'tool', or 'raw material'. These values are set in the attribute Part.PartTypes; see 5.1.1.

- General classification
  - Parts may need to be classified according to a classification system with explicit reference to classification criteria and related properties. For example, pumps may be classified according to their principle of working and their capacity. Such classification is enabled by the attribute Part.ClassifiedAs; see 5.1.1. Thus, a Part may be linked to an extensive and already existing classification system.

These three concepts are represented in a data exchange by attributes of the three main information elements in each of the two templates “Part” and “Assembly.”
5.1 Templates “Part” and “Assembly”

To enable independent use of Parts and Assemblies both a “Part” template and an “Assembly” template are specified here. They support the ability to uniquely identify Parts and Assemblies including their metadata and properties. This backbone of the AP242 information model consists in the AP242 BO Model of the following structurally distinct data types as also shown in Figure 14 and Figure 15:

- Part,
- PartVersion and,
- PartView respectively AssemblyDefinition.

The representations of the Part and PartVersion concepts are identical for both the “Part” and the “Assembly” templates; only on the third level of detail they differ, as shown in Figure 14 and Figure 15 below.

The Part maintains information common to all Part versions and disciplines and/or life-cycle views. It contains the base Part number and name. The base number should not be subject to any encoding of information into a single complex parseable string.

One and only one version shall be assigned to a Part base identification. The version information may represent a design revision or iteration in a design cycle of a part. The Part version collects and, thus, relates all information among all associated disciplines and life-cycle view definitions.

Part, PartVersion and PartView, respectively AssemblyDefinition, shall be written to the XML file using containment. The information elements in the white area on the left side of Figure 14 and Figure 15 are root elements and are, thus, outside of the containment blocks.

One and only one version shall be assigned to a Part base identification. The version information may represent a design revision or iteration in a design cycle of a part. The Part version collects and, thus, relates all information among all associated disciplines and life-cycle view definitions.
Figure 14: Template “Part”
5.1.1 Part

The Part entity represents the part master base information. This entity collects all information that is common among the different versions and views of the part. The part number is strictly an identifier. It should not be used as a 'smart string' with some parseable internal coding scheme, e.g., to identify version or classification information.

The Part number identifier shall be unique within the scope of the business process of the information exchange. This is typically not a problem when the product data is only used within a single company. If the data is being assembled for external use, the identification must be interpreted as unique within that broader domain. Processors may need to evaluate more than one string (i.e., more than only Part.id) to establish unique identification of the Part. The "Identifier" template provides a combination of parameters including Identifier.idRoleRef and Identifier.idContextRef that make Part identification unique.

The following XML-snippet is an example from a physical file that is in accordance to Figure 14.

The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)
<Part uid="p--000000017086CB0">
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="pid--000000017086CB0--id1" id="as1" idContextRef="o--0000000178"/>
  </Id>
  ...
  <Versions>
    <PartVersion uid="pv--000000017086CB0--id1">
      ...
      <Views>
        <PartView xsi:type="n0:AssemblyDefinition" uid="pvv--0000000017086CB0--id1">
          ...
          </PartView>
        </Views>
      </PartVersion>
    </Versions>
  </Part>

<Part uid="p--000000001E5A89F0">
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="pid--000000001E5A89F0--id2" id="plate" idContextRef="o--0000000178"/>
  </Id>
  ...
  <Versions>
    <PartVersion uid="pv--000000001E5A89F0--id2">
      ...
      <Views>
        <PartView xsi:type="n0:AssemblyDefinition" uid="pvv--000000001E5A89F0--id2">
          ...
          </PartView>
        </Views>
      </PartVersion>
    </Versions>
  </Part>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity Part attributes</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PartTypes</td>
<td>SET[1:?] of ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SameAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] ProxySelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versions</td>
<td>SET[1:?] of PartVersion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entity Part attributes</td>
<td>Attribute type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CertificationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of CertificationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ContractAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ContractAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatetimeAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EffectivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FrozenAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of FrozenAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of OrganizationOrPersonInOrganization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PartRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PartRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProjectAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ProjectAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyValueAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyValueAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RequirementAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of RequirementAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WorkRequestAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of WorkRequestAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 18: “Part” Attributes**

**Attribute recommendations**

- **ClassifiedAs**: the classifications of the Part. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Classification” template (see 4.6.5).

- **Description**: an expanded name or text that provides further information about the Part. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Description” template (see 4.6.7).

- **Id**: the identifier or set of identifiers for the Part, the part number. The referenced Identifier element shall have valid values for elements idRoleRef and idContextRef. Use “Identifier” template (see 4.6.6).
- **Name**: the nomenclature or common name of the Part. Use “Description” template (see 4.6.7).

- **PartTypes**: the category of a Part. Use ClassString type, that is, PartTypes is a set of one or many strings. The value of this element shall be one or several of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PartTypes</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'piece part'</td>
<td>a product that is not subject to decomposition from the perspective of a specific application; is also called component</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'product'</td>
<td>a thing or substance produced by a natural or artificial process; may be a piece part, an assembly of piece parts, a tool, an assembly of tools, and raw material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'software'</td>
<td>a non-tangible product that is an organized collection of computer data and instructions for use by a computer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'tool'</td>
<td>a product used to manufacture products by applying various manufacturing technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'assembly'</td>
<td>a product that is decomposable into a set of piece parts or other assemblies from the perspective of a specific application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'raw material'</td>
<td>basic substance in its natural, modified, or semi-processed state, used as an input to a production process that shall result in piece parts and tools</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Versions**: the related variants of the Part; a Part shall have at least one PartVersion.

- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

### 5.1.2 PartVersion

The PartVersion element represents the identification of a specific version of the base Part identification. A particular PartVersion is always related to exactly one Part. This is why, in XML it is embedded within a Part element.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:**

- For the purpose of the typical CAX data exchange use case of these recommended practices, at least one view definition (PartView) shall be assigned to each PartVersion.

- For the purpose of the typical CAX data exchange use case of these recommended practices, it is recommended to exchange only one version for each part.

Examples of PartVersion instantiations are in the XML-snippet in section 5.1.1.
### Table 19: "PartVersion" Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity PartVersion attributes</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CertificationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of CertificationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ContractAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ContractAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatetimeAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EffectivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FrozenAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of FrozenAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PartVersionRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PartVersionRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProjectAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ProjectAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyValueAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyValueAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RequirementAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of RequirementAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WorkRequestAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of WorkRequestAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Attribute recommendations

- **ApprovalAssignment**: the level of acceptance of the PartVersion. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "Approval" template (see 4.6.12).
- **ClassifiedAs**: the classifications of the PartVersion. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "Classification" template (see 4.6.5).
- **DatetimeAssignment**: the date and time of the creation or update of the PartVersion. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "DateTime" template (see 4.6.11).
• **Description**: the reason for the creation of the version. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "Description" template (see 4.6.7).

• **Id**: the identifier or set of identifiers for the PartVersion, the part version number. Use "Identifier" template (see 4.6.6).
  o **Preprocessor Recommendations**: If an organization does not version parts, it is recommended that the id attribute contains the string ‘/NULL’ to indicate that no version information is relevant or intended. In this case only a single PartVersion shall be assigned to the Part. The id attribute shall be given the value /ANY if the assembly structure of the source system stores only the Part number and computes the identifier of the PartVersion at runtime based on parameters, such as, latest version and version valid at a given time.
    ▪ Note: This technique may reduce the amount of data sent in change packages, but it also reduces the ability to track the actual contents of parts lists at a particular change level.
  o For the purpose of the typical CAx data exchange use case of these recommended practices, the use of ‘/ANY’ is not recommended.
  o **Postprocessor Recommendations**: If the value of the id attribute for a PartVersion is the string ‘/NULL’, postprocessors should use this as an indication that the sending system or business process does not support versioning of Parts. Postprocessors need to recognize an id value of ‘/ANY’ as a generic revision of a Part that is involved as a component in an assembly. This is used to indicate that any existing revision of the component is valid for use in the parent assembly and that the right PartVersion identifier must be computed at runtime.

• **OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment**: an organization or person in organization with a specific relation to the PartVersion according to the OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment.role attribute. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "PersonInOrganization" template (see 4.6.14).

• **Views**: the set of PartView objects that are defined for the PartVersion.
  o Each PartVersion shall have at least one associated PartView. This PartView shall represent the mechanical view definition of the part. For this mandatory PartView, the SET-type attribute PartView.initialContext.applicationDomain.-sameAs shall contain the ProxyString type value ‘mechanical design’. No other instances of PartView of the same PartVersion shall contain this string.
  o Other instances of PartView may be associated to the same PartVersion, for example, a PartView of the composites representation of the part. A meaningful value of PartView.initialContext.applicationDomain.sameAs should be agreed between data exchange partners; the list of pre-defined values in 4.6.8 may be extended by user-defined values.

• Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

### 5.1.3 PartView

The PartView entity represents the identification of a particular view on a version of the part base identification relevant for the requirements of particular life-cycle stages, application domains and user-defined properties. A PartView may be based on an application domain and/or a life-cycle stage (e.g., design, manufacturing). A PartView collects product data for a specific discipline and life-cycle. More than one PartView may be associated with a particular PartVersion, each representing a different view of the Part.
AssemblyDefinition is a subtype of PartView. It is used to associate subordinate components of the Part.

The PartView entity enables the establishment of many relationships between Parts and other product data concepts, such as, assembly structures, properties (including shape), and external descriptions of the product via documents (see chapter 8).

**Preprocessor Recommendations:**

- The use of PartView entities is not strictly required by rules in the AP242 BO Model, but it is strongly recommended. All PartVersion entities shall have at least one associated PartView.
- For the purpose of the typical CAx data exchange use case of these recommended practices, PartVersion shall have maximum one AssemblyDefinition.

An example of a PartView instantiation is in the XML-snippet in section 5.1.1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity PartView attributes</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AdditionalContexts</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ViewContext</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DefiningGeometry</td>
<td>OPTIONAL GeometricModel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>OPTIONAL Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InitialContext</td>
<td>ViewContext</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InZone</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InZone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaterialIdentification</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of MaterialIdentification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occurrence</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Occurrence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SameAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ProxySelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ShapeDependentProperty</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ShapeDependentProperty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ShapeElement</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ShapeElement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SurfaceCondition</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SurfaceCondition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BreakdownVersionAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of BreakdownVersionAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatetimeAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EffectivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FrozenAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of FrozenAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Table 20: “PartView” Attributes**

**Attribute recommendations**

- **AdditionalContexts**: the set of ViewContext objects that are relevant context descriptions for this PartView in addition to the InitialContext. The AdditionalContexts shall not contain the ViewContext that is referenced as the InitialContext. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “ViewContext” template (see 4.6.8).

- **ClassifiedAs**: the classifications of the PartView. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Classification” template (see 4.6.5).

- **DefiningGeometry**: the GeometricModel that provides the shape for the PartView. See 6.1 for details of instantiating a GeometricModel and linking it to a PartView.

- **Description**: text or the set of texts that provide further information about the PartView. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Description” template (see 4.6.7).

- **Id**: the identifier or set of identifiers for the PartView. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Identifier” template (see 4.6.6).

  o **Preprocessor Recommendations**: There is no standard mapping for the id attribute of PartView; however, the value should be unique relative to other PartViews related to the same PartVersion. The id attribute shall not be 'overloaded' to include, for example, life-cycle or organizational information; this is generally not recommended for the AP242 BO Model. This attribute should contain a unique identifier for the PartView - no additional semantics are associated with this attribute.
Postprocessor Recommendations: Postprocessors do not need to expect any semantics from the id attribute; it is a pure identifying string. The id value – possibly composed of several values according to the "Identifier" template - should be unique relative to other the identifiers of other PartViews related to the same PartVersion.

- **InitialContext**: the ViewContext in which this view of the PartVersion has been designed primarily. Use "ViewContext" template (see 4.6.8).
- **Occurrence**: the instantiations of the PartView in a product structure. The element Occurrence itself cannot be instantiated. For the purpose of these recommended practices only subtypes “SingleOccurrence” (see template in 7.1) and “SpecifiedOccurrence” (see template in 7.2) shall be used.
- **ShapeDependentProperty**: a characteristic of the shape, or of a portion of the shape of a PartView. The element ShapeDependentProperty itself cannot be instantiated. All three subtypes may be used, but these recommended practices provide guidance only for GeneralShapeDependentProperty (see template in 6.3).
- **DocumentAssignment**: to assign a DocumentVersion to the PartView. See 11.2 for details.
- **PropertyValueAssignment**: to assign a PropertyValue to the PartView. Use the “PartProperty” template; see 6.2 for details.
- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

### 5.1.4 AssemblyDefinition

The AssemblyDefinition is a definition of a PartVersion that associates subordinate components to this PartVersion. It is a subtype of PartView and inherits, thus, all its attributes. As for PartViews, occurrences can be derived from AssemblyDefinition, properties, such as, shape, can be assigned to it and documents may be associated with it.

Components are added to an AssemblyDefinition by NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage; see 7.1 and 7.2.

An example of an AssemblyDefinition instantiation is in the XML-snippet in section 5.1.1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity AssemblyDefinition attributes</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AdditionalContexts</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ViewContext</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DefiningGeometry</td>
<td>OPTIONAL GeometricModel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>OPTIONAL Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InitialContext</td>
<td>ViewContext</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InZone</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InZone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaterialIdentification</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of MaterialIdentification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occurrence</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Occurrence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SameAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ProxySelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ShapeDependentProperty</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ShapeDependentProperty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entity AssemblyDefinition attributes</td>
<td>Attribute type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ShapeElement</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ShapeElement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SurfaceCondition</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SurfaceCondition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BreakdownVersionAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of BreakdownVersionAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateTimeAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EffectivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FrozenAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of FrozenAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PartViewRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PartViewRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProjectAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ProjectAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyValueAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyValueAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RequirementAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of RequirementAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ViewOccurrenceRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ViewOccurrenceRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WorkRequestAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of WorkRequestAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AssemblyType</td>
<td>OPTIONAL ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 21: “AssemblyDefinition” Attributes, including attributes inherited from “PartView”*
Attribute recommendations

- **AssemblyType**: the kind of the AssemblyDefinition. The value of this attribute need not be specified. The following are examples of recommended AssemblyType values:
  - ‘functional assembly’,
  - ‘manufacturing assembly’,
  - ‘design assembly’.

- **ViewOccurrenceRelationship**: to assign an assembly link to the PartView. Use the “SingleOccurrence” template (see 7.1 for details) or “SpecifiedOccurrence” template (see 7.2 for details).

- In addition, all attributes and attribute recommendations for PartView apply.

6 Part Properties

6.1 Template “GeometricModel”

The aim of this section is to specify the method for attaching a shape to a part and linking this shape to an external file.

The GeometricModel entity represents the shape of the Part through the PartView and the ExternalGeometricModel subtype entity allow to be attached to a DigitalFile to the shape.

The different usage of the subtypes will be detailed in the chapter 6.1.1.

The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes

![Diagram](image)

Figure 16: Template "GeometricModel"
### Table 22: "GeometricModel" Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ContextOfItems</td>
<td>GeometricCoordinateSpace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Items</td>
<td>SET[1:?] of RepresentationItem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RepresentationTypes</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VersionId</td>
<td>OPTIONAL Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ModelExtent</td>
<td>OPTIONAL String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ModelProperty</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ModelProperty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateTimeAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EffectivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FrozenAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of FrozenAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GeometricRepresentationRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of GeometricRepresentationRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Attribute recommendations

- **The ContextOfItems attribute** is the reference to the GeometricCoordinateSpace element.

- **Description**: the text or the set of texts that provides further information about the GeometricModel. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Description” template (see 4.6.7).

- **The Id attribute** is the text that represents an identifying name or code. Use IdentifierString type. The Items attribute is the SET of elements representing the different kind of representation item attached to a shape. Reference to AxisPlacement (see below) or CartesianTransformation element (see 7.3.1).

- **Name**: the words or set of words by which the GeometricModel is known. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Description” template (see 4.6.7).
Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GeometricCoordinateSpace</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accuracies</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of MeasureQualification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DimensionCount</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Units</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Unit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 23: "GeometricCoordinateSpace" Attributes

Attribute recommendations

- The **DimensionCount** attribute specifies the dimensionality.
- The **Id** attribute is the text that represents an identifying name or code. Use IdentifierString type.
- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AxisPlacement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External</td>
<td>OPTIONAL ExternalItem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axis</td>
<td>OPTIONAL String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RefDirection</td>
<td>OPTIONAL String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 24: "AxisPlacement" Attributes

Attribute recommendations

- **Name**: the words or set of words by which the AxisPlacement is known. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use of CharacterString element.
- **Axis**: the relative x, y and z value specifying the direction of the local Z axis of the AxisPlacement. The value of this attribute need not be specified.
- **Position**: the relative x, y and optionally z value specifying the origin position of the AxisPlacement.
- **RefDirection**: the relative x, y and z value specifying the reference direction for the local X axis of the AxisPlacement. The value of this attribute need not be specified.
- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

Preprocessor Recommendations:

- The GeometricCoordinateSpace.DimensionCount must be greater than 0.
- If a RefDirection is given, it shall be specified so that it is orthogonal to the Axis.

Postprocessor Recommendations: None specified.

Related Entities: There are no specific related entities.
The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```xml
...<PartView xsi:type="n0:AssemblyDefinition" id="pvv--000000001AA415B0--id6">
  <DefiningGeometry uidRef="egm--000000001AA415B0"/>
</PartView>
...
</GeometricRepresentation>
...<GeometricCoordinateSpace uid="ccs--origin">
  <DimensionCount>3</DimensionCount>
  <Id id="/NULL"/>
</GeometricCoordinateSpace>

6.1.1  ExternalGeometricModel / ComposedGeometricModel

The ExternalGeometricModel / ComposedGeometricModel entities are subtype of the GeometricModel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ClassificationSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ContextOfItems</td>
<td>GeometricCoordinateSpace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Items</td>
<td>SET[1:?] of AxisPlacement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RepresentationTypes</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VersionId</td>
<td>OPTIONAL Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateTimeAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EffectivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FrozenAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of FrozenAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GeometricRepresentationRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of GeometricRepresentationRelationship</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 25: “ComposedGeometricModel” / “ExternalGeometricModel” Attributes

**Property**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>InformationUsageRightAssignment</th>
<th>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InformationUsageRightAssignment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ModelExtent</td>
<td>OPTIONAL STRING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ModelProperty</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ModelProperty</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attribute recommendations**

- **GeometricRepresentationRelationship**: add for each element stored in ‘Items’ an instance of GeometricRepresentationRelationship to the ComposedGeometricModel. This attribute shall not be used in the case of an ExternalGeometricModel.
- The other attributes are either not covered by these Recommended Practices, or it is not recommended to use them for the purpose of these Recommended Practices.
- In addition, all attributes and attribute recommendations for GeometricModel apply.

The attribute ExternalGeometricModel.ExternalModel is described in the chapter 9.

**Preprocessor Recommendations**: None specified.

**Postprocessor Recommendations**: None specified.

**Related Entities**: There are no specific related entities.

**The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)**

```xml
...<GeometricRepresentation uid="egm--000000001AA415B0" xsi:type="n0:ExternalGeometricModel">
    <ContextOfItems uidRef="ccs--origin-2"/>
    <Id id="bolt.jt"/>
    <Items>
        <RepresentationItem xsi:type="n0:AxisPlacement" uid="repi--000000001AA415B0--18">
            <Position>0.0 0.0 0.0</Position>
        </RepresentationItem>
    </Items>
...<GeometricRepresentation>
...```
6.1.2 The subtype of ExternalGeometricModel

The BO Model allows further specification of which type of geometry is contained in an external model. For this purpose, a number of subtypes of ExternalGeometricModel are defined. These subtypes do not add any additional attributes; they carry the additional information in their name. The subtypes of ExternalGeometricModel are:

- ExternalAdvancedBrepShapeRepresentation,
- ExternalCsgShapeRepresentation,
- ExternalCurveSweptSolidShapeRepresentation,
- ExternalEdgeBasedWireframeShapeRepresentation,
- ExternalElementaryBrepShapeRepresentation,
- ExternalFacetedBrepShapeRepresentation,
- ExternalGeometricallyBoundedSurfaceShapeRepresentation,
- ExternalGeometricallyBoundedWireframeShapeRepresentation,
- ExternalManifoldSurfaceShapeRepresentation,
- ExternalShellBasedWireframeShapeRepresentation,
- ExternalTessellatedShapeRepresentation

are optional (since ExternalGeometricModel is not defined as ABSTRACT) and mutually exclusive (ONEOF)

Preprocessor Recommendations:

- If a geometry file contains exact BREP geometry combined with tessellated geometry), ExternalAdvancedBrepShapeRepresentation shall be used

Postprocessor Recommendations:

- If some of the subtypes are not supported by the converter, the general behavior shall be 'only for information', and shall not cause the postprocessor to stop processing. The postprocessor shall load and import the file correctly.

6.2 Template “PartProperty”

In the same way than in section 3.1 of the PDM Schema Usage Guide V4.3, the aim of this section is to specify how to attach a property to a part.

The PropertyValueAssignment entity represents the attachment of the PartView to the value represented via the "NumericalValue" (see 4.6.9) or “StringValue” templates (see 4.6.10).

The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes
Figure 17: Template "PartProperty"

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PropertyValueAssignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AssignedPropertyValues</td>
<td>SET[1:?] of PropertyValue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>OPTIONAL Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role</td>
<td>OPTIONAL ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AssignmentObjectRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of AssignmentObjectRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConditionAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ConditionAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateTimeAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EffectivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FrozenAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of FrozenAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The AssignedPropertyValues attribute is the SET of element references representing the properties attached to the Part. Use “NumericalValue” (see 4.6.9) or “StringValue” templates (see 4.6.10).

Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

Preprocessor Recommendations: It is recommended that all the properties attached to a Part use the same PropertyValueAssignment.

When applicable, the following values shall be used for the attribute Name inside the “NumericalValue” (see 4.6.9) or “StringValue” (see 4.6.10) templates:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Name</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘recyclability property’</td>
<td>A recyclability property is information concerning the ability to reuse objects or components of objects after their primarily intended usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘mass property’</td>
<td>A mass property is a quantity of matter of which an object consists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘quality property’</td>
<td>A quality property is a property that provides information about the level of quality of products or processes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘cost property’</td>
<td>A cost property is a property that specifies costs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘duration property’</td>
<td>A duration property is a property that specifies a period of time during which a given object is used or will last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘remarks property’</td>
<td>A remark is some text that while associated with a part does not identify or describe it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Postprocessor Recommendations: None specified.

Related Entities: There are no specific related entities.

The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```
<Part uid="p--0000000017086CB0">
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="pid--0000000017086CB0--id1" id="as1" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
  </Id>
  <Name>
    <CharacterString>as1</CharacterString>
  </Name>
  <PartTypes>
```
6.3 Template “ShapeDependentProperty”

In the same way as in section 3.2 of the PDM Schema Usage Guide V4.3, the aim of this section is to specify how to attach a property to part shape.

The ShapeDependentProperty entity represents the characteristic of the shape, or of a portion of the shape of a PartView.

It is recommended to use the subtypes of ShapeDependentProperty in the following way:

- The CentreOfMass entity for the centre of the mass of a body.
- The MomentsOfInertia entity to describe the matrix of inertia of a rigid body.
- The GeneralShapeDependentProperty to define a user-defined characteristic of an object.

For the time being, the current version of this document describes only the subtype GeneralShapeDependentProperty.
6.3.1 GeneralShapeDependentProperty

The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes

![Diagram](image)

**Figure 18:** Template "ShapeDependentProperty" for either PartView or ShapeElement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>GeneralShapeDependentProperty</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>GENERALShapeDependentProperty</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DefinedIn</td>
<td></td>
<td>OPTIONAL GeometricCoordinateSpace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td></td>
<td>OPTIONAL Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role</td>
<td></td>
<td>OPTIONAL ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ValueDetermination</td>
<td></td>
<td>OPTIONAL ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyType</td>
<td></td>
<td>PropertyDefinitionSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyValue</td>
<td></td>
<td>PropertyValueSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit</td>
<td></td>
<td>OPTIONAL Unit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 27:** "GeneralShapeDependentProperty" Attributes

**Attribute recommendations**

- The **PropertyType** attribute the text by which the type of the property is described. Use PropertyDefinitionString type.
- The **PropertyValue** attribute is the element reference representing the properties attached to the Part. Use “NumericalValue” templates (see 4.6.9).
- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.
### Table 28: "ShapeElement" Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>OPTIONAL Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaterialIdentification</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RepresentedGeometry</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of RepresentedGeometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ShapeDependentProperty</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ShapeDependentProperty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SurfaceCondition</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SurfaceCondition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ThicknessSizeDimension</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ThicknessSizeDimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyValueAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyValueAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ShapeElementRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ShapeElementRelationship</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attribute recommendations**

- The *Id* attribute is the text that represents an identifying name or code for the portion of shape. It’s recommended to set this attribute. Use IdentifierString type.

- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:** When applicable, the following values shall be used for the attribute PropertyType:

- 'centroid': The PropertyValue identifies the centre point of the mass of a body. The relative position of this point within the body is an invariant datum relative to rotation and translation.
  - Example: GeneralShapeDependentProperty with propertyType 'centroid' is used instead of the object CentreOfMass: sometimes the GeneralShapeDependentProperty is calculated by some system at some point of time. But there are cases where the information, e.g., the GeneralShapeDependentProperty of a die, is transferred into a following stage, e.g., in order to perform a feasibility check, where there is only a simplified shape representation that does not allow the calculation of the exact GeneralShapeDependentProperty. Yet, in this stage the information about the GeneralShapeDependentProperty is needed in order to check whether the transport of a die with a crane is feasible.

- ‘surface area’: The PropertyValue specifies the overall surface of the bodies contained in the referenced shape.

- ‘volume’: The PropertyValue specifies the overall volume of the bodies contained in the referenced shape.

**Postprocessor Recommendations:** None specified.

**Related Entities:** There are no specific related entities.
The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```xml
<Part uid="p--000000017086CB0">
    <Id>
        <Identifier uid="pid--000000017086CB0--id1" id="as1" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
    </Id>
    <Name>
        <CharacterSet>as1</CharacterSet>
    </Name>
    <PartTypes>
        <ClassString>assembly</ClassString>
    </PartTypes>
    <Versions>
        <PartVersion uid="pv--000000017086CB0--id1">
            <Id>
                <Identifier uid="pvid--000000017086CB0--id1" id="/NULL" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
            </Id>
            <Views>
                <PartView xsi:type="n0:AssemblyDefinition" uid="pvv--000000017086CB0--id1">
                    <InitialContext uidRef="ac--mechanicaldesign--design"/>
                    <ShapeDependentProperty uid="sdp--000000782" xsi:type="n1:GeneralShapeDependentProperty">
                        <PropertyType>
                            <PropertyDefinitionString>volume</PropertyDefinitionString>
                        </PropertyType>
                        <PropertyValue>
                            <NumericalValue>
                                <Definition>
                                    <PropertyDefinitionString>Overall volume</PropertyDefinitionString>
                                </Definition>
                                <Name>
                                    <CharacterSet>Shape parameters</CharacterSet>
                                </Name>
                                <Unit uidRef="u--00000000"></Unit>
                                <ValueComponent>120</ValueComponent>
                            </NumericalValue>
                        </PropertyValue>
                        <ShapeElement uidRef="se--1"/>
                    </PartView>
                </Views>
            </PartVersion>
        </Versions>
    </Part>
</Part>
```

7 Part Structure and Relationships

The aim of this section is to map a multi-level assembly, possibly containing multiple individual occurrences of the same component, and to position (orientation and location) each occurrence in 3D relatively to its usage in the next higher assembly. It does this in the same way that section 4.2 of the PDM Schema Usage Guide V4.3 accomplishes it.

From the four possible kinds of occurrences in AP242 BO Model (derived from the abstract supertype ‘Occurrence’), only these two are in scope of this document:

- **SingleOccurrence**: has no owned attributes, but enables to position (orientation and location) each occurrence in 3D

- **SpecifiedOccurrence**: enable to distinct between multiple individual occurrences of the same component. This may i.e. be used to map kinematic constraints or instance styling (which are both not yet in scope of this document).

The further two subtypes of Occurrence (QuantifiedOccurrence and SelectedOccurrence) are used in the area of BoM systems (not yet in scope of this document).

### 7.1 Template “SingleOccurrence”

This is the normal case, where the usages of a component are only documented within their next higher assembly.
Figure 19: Template "SingleOccurrence"

The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```xml
<Part uid="p--0000000017086CB0">
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="pid--0000000017086CB0--id1" id="as1" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
  </Id>
  ...
  <Versions>
    <PartVersion uid="pv--0000000017086CB0--id1"/>
    ...
    <PartView xsi:type="n0:AssemblyDefinition" uid="pvv--0000000017086CB0--id1">
      ...
      <ViewOccurrenceRelationship uid="pvvid--000000001E5A89F0--10" xsi:type="n0:NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage">
        <Related uidRef="pl--000000001E5A89F0--10"/>
        <RelationType>
          <ClassString>next assembly occurrence</ClassString>
        </RelationType>
        ...
      </ViewOccurrenceRelationship>
      ...
    </PartView>
  </Versions>
</Part>
```
Preprocessor Recommendations:

The usage of SingleOccurrence is necessary to position each occurrence in 3D. QuantifiedOccurrence shall not be used in a CAx context. Where multiple occurrences are needed, use multiple instances of SingleOccurrence.

It is not recommended to use the supertypes of NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage like ViewOccurrenceRelationship or AssemblyOccurrenceRelationship.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ClassificationSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>OPTIONAL Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaterialIdentification</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of MaterialIdentification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Related</td>
<td>Occurrence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RelationType</td>
<td>ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateTimeAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EffectivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FrozenAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of FrozenAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 29: "NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage" Attributes

**Attribute recommendations**

- **Description**: the text or the set of texts that provide further information about the Assembly structure link. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "Description" template.

- **Related**: Reference to a SingleOccurrence of the component part built into the assembly part.

- **RelationType**: the meaning of the relationship. Use ClassString type. Mandatory value: 'next assembly occurrence'.

- **PropertyValueAssignment**: adds the value of a property to the NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage. Use "PartProperty" template (see 6.2)

- **Placement**: specifies the transformation information which is used to locate and orient the constituent in the coordinate space of the AssemblyDefinition. Placement is a reference to a CartesianTransformation, GeometricRepresentationRelationshipWithPlacementTransformation, GeometricRepresentationRelationshipWithCartesianTransformation or GeometricRepresentationRelationshipWithSameCoordinateSpace. For more details, refer to 7.3.

- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.
## Table 30: "SingleOccurrence" Attributes

### Attribute recommendations

- **Description**: the text or the set of texts that provides further information about the SingleOccurrence. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "Description" template.

- **Id**: stores the Identifier for the SingleOccurrence (shall be unique over all Occurrences defined under this PartView). Use IdentifierString type.

- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.
7.2 Template “SpecifiedOccurrence”

In order to distinguish a specific occurrence of a component in an assembly of more than two hierarchical levels, the SpecifiedOccurrence entity is used additionally to the SingleOccurrence mentioned above.

For example, a wheel-axle assembly (A) contains two wheels (B), the right (B1) and the left (B2). The wheel again contains a sub-assembly (C), which again contains a component part (D). The requirement to individually identify the left D, for example, is supported by this capability.

```
A
|
B1--B
|
|  C1--C
|
|   D1--D
|
B2--B
|
|  C1--C
|
|   D1--D
```
Figure 20: Template “SpecifiedOccurrence”
The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```xml
<Part uid="p--0000000017086CB0">
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="pid--000000017086CB0--id1" id="as1" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
  </Id>

  ...</Part>
```

**Note:** due to the complexity of the picture, the attributes of SpecifiedOccurrence Description and Id which refer to the “Description” and “Identifier” templates are not mentioned here. The same applies for the attributes of NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage: Description and RelationType.
Note: using the current BO Model XSD, the instantiation of SpecifiedOccurrence is impossible (missing SpecifiedOccurrence.UpperAssemblyRelationship and not expected Occurrence.SpecifiedOccurrence): a proposal has been submitted to the ISO (Bugzilla issue see #5078 in Annex B). The above example builds upon this proposal.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity SpecifiedOccurrence</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ClassificationSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DefiningGeometry</td>
<td>OPTIONAL GeometricModel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaterialIdentification</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of MaterialIdentification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ShapeDependentProperty</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ShapeDependentProperty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ShapeElement</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ShapeElement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SurfaceCondition</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SurfaceCondition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BreakdownVersionAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of BreakdownVersionAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CertificationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of CertificationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateTimeAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EffectivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FrozenAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of FrozenAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProjectAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ProjectAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyValueAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyValueAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AssemblyContext</td>
<td>AssemblyDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SubAssemblyRelationship</td>
<td>Occurrence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UpperAssemblyRelationship</td>
<td>Occurrence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 31: “SpecifiedOccurrence” Attributes**

**Attribute recommendations**

- **Description**: the text or the set of texts that provides further information about the SingleOccurrence. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "Description" template.
- **Id**: stores the Identifier for the SpecifiedOccurrence (shall be unique over all Occurrences defined under this PartView). Use IdentifierString type.
• **AssemblyContext**: Reference to the AssemblyDefinition instance of the top level assembly node under which the SpecifiedOccurrence Mechanism is used (for example to describe Kinematic constraints)

• **SubAssemblyRelationship**: Shall reference one of the SingleOccurrence instances (for example the left one or the right one, if many are provided) defined under the same part as the one under which the current SpecifiedOccurrence instance is defined.

• **UpperAssemblyRelationship**: References the Occurrence in which the current SpecifiedOccurrence is used: it may be a SpecifiedOccurrence of a next higher assembly, or if none are provided (in case it is the first assembly level), one of its SingleOccurrences.

• Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

### 7.3 Full / Simplified Positioning Representation

The scope of this section corresponds to section 3.4 of the PDM Schema Usage Guide V4.3

In addition to the usual (geometrical) way of mapping the 3D positioning within an assembly structure, a more compact (especially in XML) and simple way has been defined in AP242. This section describes all possible ways.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:**

As long as no critical precision issues occur (especially caused by the multiplication of several relative positioning matrices containing large numbers in deep assembly structures), either relative or absolute 3D positioning can be used.

Since large numbers cause computers to truncate decimal digits, the depth of such assembly structure shall be limited in the case of relative positioning, or absolute positioning should be used. In the latter case, all intermediate assembly nodes between the top node and the assemblies/components associated to an absolute positioning should be positioned via an identity matrix, or share the same coordinate space.

Absolute positioning of multiple usages of components requires the use of SpecifiedOccurrence (see previous section) and is therefore not recommended.

The use of mirroring in the 3D transformation from a component part in an assembly part is not allowed.

The vectors within the RotationMatrix of a CartesianTransformation and the Axis/RefDirection of an AxisPlacement shall be orthogonal to each other.

**Note:** Transformation matrices exchanged using this BO model are not guaranteed to be orthogonal, since compared to the definition of axis2_placement_3d in Part 42, the definition of AxisPlacement in the BO Model is missing one step in the calculation intended to ensure the orthogonality of axis and refDirection. Hence, special attention is needed to define them as orthogonal from the beginning. Otherwise, in the case of multi-level assembly the concatenation of the transformation matrices may result in inconsistent or incorrect results between exchange partners.

The simplified positioning representation is recommended whenever the assembly nodes have no geometry. It is a shortcut to avoid to instantiate GeometricModel if there is none. If there is a GeometricModel, it has to be referenced by the GeometricRepresentationRelationship and to point to a GeometricCoordinateSpace => the simplified positioning representation is not usable.
The implicit or explicit representation is recommended whenever the assembly nodes have geometry, since from a pure CAD point of view, each Geometry has his GeometricCoordinateSpace.

This recommendation applies independently from the fact that nested or monolithic mapping is used (see section 9.2), since the reference to nested nodes is not geometry but AP242 XML. The only point is: does the assembly node own a geometry file or not.

7.3.1 Template “Simplified Positioning Representation”

The only instance needed here is a CartesianTransformation.

Preprocessor Recommendations:

Since this mapping does not support the explicit mapping of a unit (for the elements of the translation vector), a DefaultUnit shall be defined in ExchangeContext and all translation vectors shall be given according to this unit.

![Diagram of SingleOccurrence]

**Figure 21: Template “Simplified Positioning Representation”**

The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)
Entity CartesianTransformation | Attribute type
--- | ---
External | OPTIONAL ExternalItem;
Name | OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect
RotationMatrix | String
Scale | Real
TranslationVector | String

Table 32: "CartesianTransformation" Attributes

**Attribute recommendations**

- **Name**: the words or set of words by which the CartesianTransformation is known. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Description” template.
- **RotationMatrix**: 3-3 Matrix with the following values: xx xy xz yx yy yz zx zy zz
- **Scale**: According to the AP242 ISO specification, the scale factor shall be omitted or set to 1.0.
- **TranslationVector**: 3-dimensional vector with the following values: x y z

Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.
Figure 22: Instantiation example if Part #2 has geometry
7.3.2 Full Positioning Representations

In all these mapping alternatives, the assembly and the component node are associated to a subtype of GeometricModel and the 3D Positioning information is mapped in a subtype of GeometricRepresentationRelationship that references both GeometricModels.

Here some common recommendations and entities applying to all mapping alternatives:

**Preprocessor Recommendations:**

The GeometricModel associated to the Assembly node shall be of kind ComposedGeometricModel, while

The GeometricModel associated to the Component node shall be of kind:

- ExternalGeometricModel if it is a simple part and has its own geometry, defined in a digital file (see section File Reference)
- ComposedGeometricModel if it is an assembly node

The use of GeometricModel itself (without a subtype) as well as the use of further subtypes of GeometricModel (i.e. TransformedGeometricModel) is not recommended.

The use of the subtypes of ExternalGeometricModel is optional (like in the EXPRESS schema, since ExternalGeometricModel is not an ABSTRACT SUPERTYPE), and shall be interpreted purely as ‘for information purpose only’ by the postprocessor. There are several reasons for this:

- In a JT file, it is possible to combine exact BREP geometry with the LODs (=tessellated geometry) → the ONEOF constraint defined in the EXPRESS schema between the subtypes doesn’t apply all the time
- Some of the subtypes are not supported by the converters (for example ExternalCurveSweptSolidShapeRepresentation).
- Since currently most converters do not evaluate the Creation_Property, Format_Property, File_Type_Property during import, but rather try to load the file → it is likely they will also not evaluate the subtypes of ExternalGeometricModel
- It may be quite an effort to add this to the converters, with a rather low added value

In case of a relative 3D positioning, it is not recommended to reuse the same instance of GeometricCoordinateSpace for both geometric models, since each of them has its own coordinate space.

If necessary an adjustment to refDirection has to be made to maintain orthogonality to the axis direction. If axis or refDirection are omitted, these directions are taken from the geometric coordinate system.

Although GeometricModel is defined as XML RootObject, it should be always associated to one and only one PartView via DefinedGeometry.

**Postprocessor Recommendations:**

To derive the Y vector from the Axis (Z) and RefDirection (X) of an AxisPlacement, please refer to the Annex D (Conversion from Implicit to Explicit Transformation Information) taken over from the PDM Usage Guide.

The subtypes of ExternalGeometricModel shall be interpreted purely as ‘for information purpose only’. Do not rely on them for processing the file and do not stop processing in case the given subtype is not supported (the file shall be loaded anyway and an error produced only if it couldn’t be processed).
7.3.2.1 Implicit Transformation

In this case, the GeometricRepresentationRelationship is of kind GeometricRepresentation-RelationshipWithPlacementTransformation.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:**

- The AxisPlacement of the Component (Origin) shall contain ‘0 0 0’ for Position and no value for Axis and RefDirection.
- The use of further subtypes of RepresentationItem (apart of AxisPlacement) is not recommended.
- In case of relative 3D positioning, each GeometricModel should reference its own instance of GeometricCartesianSpace.
Figure 23: Full Positioning Representation with Implicit Transformation

The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)
### Entity GeometricRepresentationRelationshipWith-PlacementTransformation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Classification-Select</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definitional</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>OPTIONAL Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Related</td>
<td>ComposedGeometricModel or ExternalGeometricModel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Origin</td>
<td>AxisPlacement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target</td>
<td>AxisPlacement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 33: "GeometricRepresentationRelationshipWithPlacementTransformation" Attributes*

**Attribute recommendations**

- **Definitional**: always TRUE (makes the related GeometricModel part of the definition of the relating GeometricModel).
- **Description**: the text or the set of texts that provides further information about the GeometricRepresentationRelationship. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Description” template.
- **Related**: Reference to the ComposedGeometricModel or ExternalGeometricModel of the component part built into the assembly part.
- **Origin**: Reference to the corresponding instance of AxisPlacement associated to the related ComposedGeometricModel or ExternalGeometricModel of the component part built into the assembly part.
- **Target**: Reference to the corresponding instance of AxisPlacement associated to the relating ComposedGeometricModel of the assembly part.
- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

### 7.3.2.2 Explicit Transformation

In this case, the GeometricRepresentationRelationship is of kind GeometricRepresentation-RelationshipWithCartesianTransformation.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:**

The AxisPlacement of the Component (Related) shall contain ‘0 0 0’ for Position and no value. for Axis and RefDirection.

The use of further subtypes of RepresentationItem (apart of AxisPlacement for the component part and CartesianTransformation for the assembly part) is not recommended.

In case of relative 3D positioning, each GeometricModel should reference its own instance of GeometricCartesianSpace.
The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)
<GeometricCoordinateSpace uid="ccs--origin-1">
  <DimensionCount>3</DimensionCount>
  <Id id="/NULL"/>
</GeometricCoordinateSpace>
<GeometricCoordinateSpace uid="ccs--origin-2">
  <DimensionCount>3</DimensionCount>
  <Id id="/NULL"/>
</GeometricCoordinateSpace>
<GeometricCoordinateSpace uid="ccs--origin-3">
  <DimensionCount>3</DimensionCount>
  <Id id="/NULL"/>
</GeometricCoordinateSpace>
<Part uid="p--0000000020AB6290">
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="pid--0000000020AB6290--id5" id="nut and bolt" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
  </Id>
  ...
  <Versions>
    <PartVersion uid="pv--0000000020AB6290--id5">
      ...
      <Views>
        <PartView xsi:type="n0:AssemblyDefinition" uid="pvv--0000000020AB6290--id5">
          ...
          <ViewOccurrenceRelationship uid="pvvid--000000001AA415B0--18" xsi:type="n0:NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage">
            <Related uidRef="pi--000000001AA415B0--18"/>
            <RelationType>
              <ClassString>next assembly occurrence</ClassString>
            </RelationType>
            <Placement>
              <GeometricRepresentationRelationship uidRef="ctrafo--0000000013DF75A0--18"/>
            </Placement>
          </ViewOccurrenceRelationship>
        </PartView>
        ...
        <ViewOccurrenceRelationship uid="pvvid--000000001AA41A00--19" xsi:type="n0:NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage">
          <Related uidRef="pi--000000001AA41A00--19"/>
          <RelationType>
            <ClassString>next assembly occurrence</ClassString>
          </RelationType>
          <Placement>
            <GeometricRepresentationRelationship uidRef="ctrafo--0000000013DF75A0--19"/>
          </Placement>
        </ViewOccurrenceRelationship>
      </Views>
    </PartVersion>
  </Versions>
</Part>
<GeometricRepresentation uid="egm--0000000020AB6290" xsi:type="n0:ComposedGeometricModel">
<ContextOfItems uidRef="ccs--origin-1"/>
<Id id="nut and bolt.jt"/>
<Item>
  <RepresentationItem uid="repi--000000001AA41A00--18--2"
    xsi:type="n0:CartesianTransformation">
    <RotationMatrix>
      2.83808309622E-16 -1.48711849984E-5 0.999999999889 7.14623103897E-14 -2.82745580352E-16
    </RotationMatrix>
    <TranslationVector>7451.5038 127.065 -443.85</TranslationVector>
  </RepresentationItem>
  <RepresentationItem uid="repi--000000001AA41A00--19--2"
    xsi:type="n0:CartesianTransformation">
    <RotationMatrix>1.000000 0.000000 0.000000 0.000000 1.000000 0.000000 0.000000 0.000000 1.000000</RotationMatrix>
    <TranslationVector>-33.000000 0.000000 0.000000</TranslationVector>
  </RepresentationItem>
</Item>
<GeometricRepresentationRelationship uid="ctrafo--0000000013DF75A0--18"
  xsi:type="n0:GeometricRepresentationRelationshipWithCartesianTransformation">
  <Definitional>true</Definitional>
  <Related uidRef="egm--000000001AA415B0"/>
  <Transformation uidRef="repi--000000001AA41A00--18--2"/>
</GeometricRepresentationRelationship>
<GeometricRepresentationRelationship uid="ctrafo--0000000013DF75A0--19"
  xsi:type="n0:GeometricRepresentationRelationshipWithCartesianTransformation">
  <Definitional>true</Definitional>
  <Related uidRef="egm--000000001AA415B0"/>
  <Transformation uidRef="repi--000000001AA41A00--19--2"/>
</GeometricRepresentationRelationship>
<Part uid="p--000000001AA415B0">
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="pid--000000001AA415B0--id6" id="bolt" idContextRef="o-000000178"/>
  </Id>
  ...
  <Versions>
    <PartVersion uid="pv--000000001AA415B0--id6"/>
    ...
    <PartView xsi:type="n0:AssemblyDefinition" uid="pvv--000000001AA415B0--id6">
      <DefiningGeometry uidRef="egm--000000001AA415B0"/>
      ...
      <Occurrence xsi:type="n0:SingleOccurrence" uid="pi--000000001AA415B0--18">
        <id id="bolt.1"/>
      </Occurrence>
      ...
    </PartView>
    ...
  </PartVersion>
</Part>
CAx-IF Recommended Practices
AP242 BO Model XML Assembly Structure
Version 1.00; February 13, 2015

</Part>
</GeometricRepresentation>

</Part>
</Versions>

</Part>
</GeometricRepresentation>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity GeometricRepresentationRelationship- WithCartesianTransformation</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ClassificationSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definitional</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>OPTIONAL Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Related</td>
<td>ComposedGeometricModel or ExternalGeometricModel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transformation</td>
<td>CartesianTransformation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 34: "GeometricRepresentationRelationshipWithCartesianTransformation" Attributes

Attribute recommendations

- **Definitional**: always TRUE (makes the related GeometricModel part of the definition of the relating GeometricModel).
- **Description**: the text or the set of texts that provides further information about the GeometricRepresentationRelationship. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "Description" template.
- **Related**: Reference to the ComposedGeometricModel or ExternalGeometricModel of the component part built into the assembly part
- **Transformation**: Reference to the corresponding instance of CartesianTransformation associated to the relating ComposedGeometricModel of the assembly part
- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

7.3.2.3 Same Coordinate Space

In this case, the GeometricRepresentationRelationship is of kind GeometricRepresentationRelationshipWithSameCoordinateSpace.

It can only apply to identify 3D transformations (identity matrix).

**Preprocessor Recommendations:**

The AxisPlacement of the Component (Related) and of the Assembly (Relating) shall contain '0 0 0' for Position and no value. for Axis and RefDirection.

The use of further subtypes of RepresentationItem (apart of AxisPlacement for the component part and for the assembly part) is not recommended.

Unlike the two previous mapping alternatives, in this case the upper and lower GeometricModel should share the same instance of GeometricCartesianSpace.
Figure 25: Full Positioning Representation with Same Coordinate Space
The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```xml
<GeometricCoordinateSpace uid="ccs--origin-1">
  <DimensionCount>3</DimensionCount>
</GeometricCoordinateSpace>

<Part uid="p--0000000020AB6290">
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="pid--0000000020AB6290--id5" id="nut and bolt" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
  </Id>

  ...<Versions>
    <PartVersion uid="pv--0000000020AB6290--id5">
      ...<Views>
        <PartView xsi:type="n0:AssemblyDefinition" uid="pvv--0000000020AB6290--id5">
          ...<ViewOccurrenceRelationship uid="pvvid--000000001AA415B0--18" xsi:type="n0:NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage">
            <Related uidRef="pi--000000001AA415B0--18"/>
            <RelationType>
              <ClassString>next assembly occurrence</ClassString>
            </RelationType>
            <Placement>
              <GeometricRepresentationRelationship uidRef="ctrafo--0000000013DF75A0--18"/>
            </Placement>
          </ViewOccurrenceRelationship>
          ...<ViewOccurrenceRelationship uid="pvvid--000000001AA41A00--19" xsi:type="n0:NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage">
            <Related uidRef="pi--000000001AA41A00--19"/>
            <RelationType>
              <ClassString>next assembly occurrence</ClassString>
            </RelationType>
            <Placement>
              <GeometricRepresentationRelationship uidRef="ctrafo--0000000013DF75A0--19"/>
            </Placement>
          </ViewOccurrenceRelationship>
        </PartView>
      </Views>
    </PartVersion>
  </Versions>
</Part>

<GeometricRepresentation uid="egm--0000000020AB6290" xsi:type="n0:ComposedGeometricModel">
  <ContextOfItems uidRef="ccs--origin-1"/>
  <Id id="nut and bolt.jt"/>
  <Items>
    <RepresentationItem uid="repi--000000001AA41A00--18--2" xsi:type="n0:AxisPlacement"/>
  </Items>
</GeometricRepresentation>
```
<Part uid="p--00000001AA41A00">
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="pid--00000001AA41A00--id7" id="nut" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
  </Id>
  ...
  <Versions>
    <PartVersion uid="pv--00000001AA41A00--id7">
      ...
      <Views>
        <PartView xsi:type="n0:AssemblyDefinition" uid="pvv--000000001AA41A00--id7">
          <DefiningGeometry uidRef="egm--000000001AA41A00"/>
          ...
          <Occurrence xsi:type="n0:SingleOccurrence" uid="pi--000000001AA41A00--19">
            <Id id="nut.1"/>
          </Occurrence>
          ...
        </PartView>
      </Views>
      </PartVersion>
      ...
    </Versions>
  </Part>
  <GeometricRepresentation uid="egm--000000001AA41A00" xsi:type="n0:ExternalGeometricModel">
    <ContextOfItems uidRef="ccs--origin-1"/>
    <Id id="nut.jt"/>
    <Items>
      <RepresentationItem xsi:type="n0:AxisPlacement" uid="repi--000000001AA41A00--19">
        <Position>0.0 0.0 0.0</Position>
      </RepresentationItem>
    </Items>
    ...
  </GeometricRepresentation>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ClassificationSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definitional</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>OPTIONAL Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Related</td>
<td>ComposedGeometricModel or ExternalGeometricModel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 35: “GeometricRepresentationRelationshipWithSameCoordinateSpace” Attributes
Attribute recommendations

- **Definitional**: always TRUE (makes the related GeometricModel part of the definition of the relating GeometricModel).
- **Description**: the text or the set of texts that provides further information about the GeometricRepresentationRelationship. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Description” template.
- **Related**: Reference to the ComposedGeometricModel or ExternalGeometricModel of the component part built into the assembly part
- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

8 Document Identification and Classification

The scope of this section corresponds to sections 5 and 6 of the PDM Schema Usage Guide V4.3.

A Document in the context of ISO 10303-3001 is a managed document. This means, it is under revision control, and various representations of a document version may be distinguished. The DocumentVersion represents the minimum identification of a managed document under revision control. A document representation definition may optionally be associated with one or more constituent external files that make up the contents of the document.

Similar to Parts, the identification of Documents in the AP242 BO Model consists of three concepts:

- **Document Master Identification**:
  - Document identification has specific requirements to assign documents to other product data, and to optionally associate with the constituent external file(s) that make up a specific document representation view definition;
- **Context Information**,
  - Document identification has different context information than Part identification;
- **Type Classification**
  - Document identification has a different type classification than Part identification.

These three concepts are represented by attributes of the three elements of the Document template; see 8.1 for details.

An external file is not managed independently by the system - there is usually no revision control or any representation definitions of external files. Version identification may optionally be associated with an external file, but this is for information only and is not used for managed revision control.

If a file is under configuration control, it shall be represented as a constituent of a document definition view/representation. Thus, it is actually the managed document that is under direct configuration control; the file is only indirectly under configuration control. A change to the file results in a change to the managed document (i.e., a new version). The changed file becomes a constituent of a view/representation definition of the new document version. A simple external reference alone is not configuration controlled; it is just an external file reference to product data. See also 11.1 for association of unmanaged files.

Documents may be associated with product data in a specified role using DocumentAssignment to represent some relationship between a document and other elements of product data. Constraints may be specified on this association, in order to distinguish an applicable portion of an entire document or file in the association. This linkage may be made at the level
of the base identification of the document, the document version, or the document representation view definition. The recommended level from which a document master should reference other product data is the document version. See chapter 11 for details.

The following types of data may in general be assigned to a Document in the context of ISO 10303-3001 to characterize it further:


These recommended practices for assembly structures, however, only cover relationships to the following concepts:


For document classification the AP242 BO Model distinguishes – as for Parts - the following two approaches:

- Type classification
  - An identified document may be placed into one or several of the following categories: 'catalogue', 'manual' or 'specification'. These values are set in the attribute Document.DocumentTypes; see 8.1.1.

- General classification
  - Documents may need to be classified according to a classification system with explicit reference to classification criteria and related properties. For example, design documents may be classified according to level of design and to type of product. Such classification is enabled by the attribute Document.ClassifiedAs; see 8.1.1. Thus, a Document may be linked to an extensive and already existing classification system.

### 8.1 Template “Document”

The Document template supports – similar to the Part template (see 5.1) - the ability to uniquely identify a Document, its meta data and its properties. It consists in the AP242 BO Model of three structurally distinct data types as also shown in Figure 26:

- Document,
- DocumentVersion and,
- DocumentDefinition.

The general recommendations given for Part identification apply also to the Document identification, except where differences are noted.

Base document identification is always associated with at least one document version. Multiple document versions of a base document identification may be related together to represent document version history.

DocumentDefinition is used to define a view of a particular representation of a document version. A document version does not have to have an associated document representation definition.

The view definition of a document version is used for association of document properties, to build document structures, and to associate a document with the set of constituent external files that make it up.

Document, DocumentVersion and DocumentDefinition shall be written to the XML-file using containment. The information elements in the white area on the left side of Figure 26 are root elements and are, thus, outside of this containment block.
8.1.1 Document

The Document entity represents the document master base information. This entity collects all information that is common among the different versions and views of the document. The document number is strictly an identifier. It should not be used as a ‘smart string’ with some parseable internal coding scheme, e.g., to identify version or classification information.

The Document number identifier shall be unique within the scope of the business process of the information exchange. This is typically not a problem when the Document is only used within a single company. For external use, the identification must be interpreted as unique within that broader domain. Processors may need to evaluate more than one string (i.e., more than only Document.id) to establish unique identification of the Document. The “Identifier” template provides a combination of parameters including Identifier.idRoleRef and Identifier.idContextRef that make Document identification unique.

The following XML-snippet is an example from a physical file that is in accordance to Figure 26.

The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)
Entity Document attributes | Attribute type
--- | ---
ClassifiedAs | OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Classification
Description | OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect
DocumentTypes | SET[1:?] of ClassSelect
Id | Id
Name | DescriptorSelect
SameAs | OPTIONAL SET[1:?] ProxySelect
Versions | SET[1:?] of DocumentVersion
ActivityAssignment | OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityAssignment
ActivityMethodAssignment | OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityMethodAssignment
ApprovalAssignment | OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment
CertificationAssignment | OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of CertificationAssignment
ContractAssignment | OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ContractAssignment
DateAndPersonAssignment | OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateAndPersonAssignment
Table 36: "Document" Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity Document attributes</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DatetimeAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document Assignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document Relationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EffectivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FrozenAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of FrozenAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProjectAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ProjectAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RequirementAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of RequirementAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WorkRequestAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of WorkRequestAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attribute recommendations**

- **ClassifiedAs**: the classifications of the Document. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Classification” template (see 4.6.5).

- **Description**: an expanded name or text that provides further information about the Document. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use Description template (see 4.6.7).

- **DocumentTypes**: the category of a Document. Use ClassString type if one of the values below is used, otherwise use “Class” template (see 4.6.4). As defined in the ISO AP242 specification. When applicable, the value of this element shall be one or several of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DocumentTypes</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'catalogue'</td>
<td>the Document is the catalogue in which the associated object is listed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'manual'</td>
<td>the Document is the handbook that is supplied for the associated object; and/or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'specification'</td>
<td>the Document specifies the considerations that lead to the design finally chosen for the associated object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'geometry'</td>
<td>The document file represents a shape model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'NC data'</td>
<td>The document file represents numerical control data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'FE data'</td>
<td>The document file represents finite element data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### DocumentTypes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DocumentTypes</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'sample data'</td>
<td>The document file represents measured data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'process plan'</td>
<td>The document file represents process planning data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'check plan'</td>
<td>The document file represents quality control planning data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'drawing'</td>
<td>The document file represents a technical drawing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'structured product data'</td>
<td>The document file contains product meta data and data related to product structure. This value shall be used for nested external references, when the referenced document relates to another BO Model XML file (see section 9.2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Id**: the identifier or set of identifiers for the Document, the document number. The referenced Identifier element shall have valid values for elements Identifier.idRoleRef and Identifier.idContextRef. Use “Identifier” template (see 4.6.6).
- **Name**: the words or set of words by which the Document is known. Use “Description” template (see 4.6.7).
- **Versions**: the related releases of the Document; a Document shall have at least one DocumentVersion.
- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

#### 8.1.2 DocumentVersion

A DocumentVersion is a release of a Document. It represents the identification of a specific version of the base Document identification. A particular DocumentVersion is always related to exactly one Document. This is why, in XML it is embedded within a Document element.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:**

- Though not required, it is recommended to assign at least one view definition to each document version. A valid exception to this general rule is the exchange of versions that represent an entire version history; in this case only the most recent version is required to have an associated view definition.
- A single Document may have more than one associated DocumentVersion. This set of DocumentVersion elements represents the revision history of the Document.

An example of DocumentVersion instantiation is in the XML-snippet in section 8.1.1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity DocumentVersion attributes</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SameAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] ProxySelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Views</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentDefinition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Entity DocumentVersion attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute type</th>
<th>Attribute recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CertificationAssignment</td>
<td>the level of acceptance of the DocumentVersion. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use &quot;Approval&quot; template (see 4.6.12).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ContractAssignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatetimeAssignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentVersionRelationship</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectivityAssignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FrozenAssignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProjectAssignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RequirementAssignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimIntervalAssignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WorkRequestAssignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 37: “DocumentVersion” Attributes**

**Attribute recommendations**

- **ApprovalAssignment**: the level of acceptance of the DocumentVersion. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "Approval" template (see 4.6.12).

- **ClassifiedAs**: the classifications of the DocumentVersion. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Classification” template (see 4.6.5).

- **DatetimeAssignment**: the date and time of the creation or update of the DocumentVersion. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "DateTime" template (see 4.6.11).

- **Description**: the reason for the creation of the version. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "Description" template (see 4.6.7).

- **Id**: the identifier or set of identifiers for the DocumentVersion, the document version number. Use “Identifier” template (see 4.6.6).
  - **Preprocessor Recommendations**: If an organization does not version documents, it is recommended that the id attribute contains the string '/NULL' to indicate that no version information is relevant or intended. In this case only a single DocumentVersion shall be assigned to the Document.
**Postprocessor Recommendations:** If the value of the id attribute for a DocumentVersion is the string '/NULL', postprocessors should use this as an indication that the sending system or business process does not support versioning of Documents.

- **OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment:** an organization or person in organization with a specific relation to the DocumentVersion according to the OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment.role attribute. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "PersonInOrganization" template (see 4.6.14).

- **Views:** the set of DocumentDefinition objects that are defined for the DocumentVersion.
  
  - In general, each DocumentVersion is recommended to have an associated DocumentDefinition representing one of its view definitions. In restricted cases, a DocumentVersion without a definition may be used to enhance information about another related, fully defined version. In the following specific case a DocumentVersion may be exchanged without an associated DocumentDefinition:
    
    - When version history (sequence relationship) is represented - only the most recent version is required to have an assigned DocumentDefinition. If there is no DocumentDefinition associated with the previous versions, only basic information about the sequence of previous versions is exchanged as additional information about the current DocumentVersion that is the focus of the data exchange.

- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

### 8.1.3 DocumentDefinition

The DocumentDefinition entity denotes the definition of a particular view of a representation of a DocumentVersion. There may be more than one document representation definition associated with a single document version. The representation view definition of a document version is used for association of document properties, to build document structures, and to associate a document with the set of constituent external files that make it up. The entity DocumentDefinition supports property association and document structure. The subtype DigitalDocumentDefinition is used to associate a representation of a document version with the set of constituent files that make it up. See chapter 9 for identification of external files and for associating external files to documents.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:**

- The use of DocumentDefinition entities is not strictly required by rules in the AP242 BO Model, but it is strongly recommended. All DocumentVersion entities should always have at least one associated DocumentDefinition, except in the case of the exchange of pure version history information.

**Postprocessor Recommendations:**

- the general behavior for evaluating ContentProperty, CreationProperty, FormatProperty and SizeProperty shall be ‘only for information’, and shall not cause the postprocessor to stop processing if the given content, creation system, format or size is not supported by the postprocessor. The postprocessor shall load and import the files correctly.

An example of a DocumentDefinition instantiation is in the XML-snippet in section 8.1.1.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity (Digital)DocumentDefinition attributes</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentContent</td>
<td>OPTIONAL ContentProperty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentCreation</td>
<td>OPTIONAL CreationProperty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentFormat</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] OF FormatProperty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentSize</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SizeProperty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>OPTIONAL Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InZone</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InZone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SameAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ProxySelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BreakdownVersionAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of BreakdownVersionAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatetimeAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentDefinitionRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentDefinitionRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EffectivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FrozenAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of FrozenAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyValueAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyValueAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RequirementAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of RequirementAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 38: "(Digital)DocumentDefinition" Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WorkRequestAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of WorkRequestAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Files</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DigitalFiles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attribute recommendations**

- **ClassifiedAs**: the classifications of the DocumentDefinition. The value of this attribute does not need to be specified. Use "Classification" template (see 4.6.5).

- **Description**: text or the set of texts that provide further information about the DocumentDefinition. The value of this attribute does not need to be specified. Use "Description" template (see 4.6.7).

- **DocumentContent**: the characteristics of the content of the document represented by DocumentDefinition. The value of this attribute does not need to be specified. Use “ContentProperty” template (see 10.2).

- **DocumentCreation**: further details of the creation of the document represented by DocumentDefinition. The value of this attribute does not need be specified. Use “CreationProperty” template (see 10.3).

- **DocumentFormat**: the format of the document represented by DocumentDefinition. The value of this attribute does not need be specified. Use “FormatProperty” template (see 10.1).

- **DocumentSize**: the size of the document represented by DocumentDefinition. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “SizeProperty” template (see 10.4).

- **Id**: the identifier or set of identifiers for the DocumentDefinition. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Identifier” template (see 4.6.6).
  
  - **Preprocessor Recommendations**: There is no standard mapping for the id attribute of DocumentDefinition; however, the value should be unique relative to other DocumentDefinitions related to the same DocumentVersion. The id attribute shall not be 'overloaded' to include, for example, life-cycle or organizational information; this is generally not recommended for the AP242 BO Model. This attribute should contain a unique identifier for the DocumentDefinition - no additional semantics are associated with this attribute.
  
  - **Postprocessor Recommendations**: Postprocessors do not need to expect any semantics from the id attribute; it is a pure identifying string. The id value – possibly composed of several values according to the "Identifier" template - should be unique relative to other the identifiers of other DocumentDefinition related to the same DocumentVersion.

- **Name**: the words or set of words by which the DocumentDefinition is known. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "Description" template (see 4.6.7).

- **PropertyValueAssignment**: to assign a PropertyValue to the DocumentDefinition. Use the “DocumentFileProperty” template (see 10.5).

- **Files** (in case of DigitalDocumentDefinition): to assign one or many DigitalFiles to the DocumentDefinition. Use the “DigitalFile” template (see 9.1).

- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.
9 External Files

In the same way than in section 7 of the PDM Schema Usage Guide V4.3, the aim of this section is to map simple external references to a named file.

Referencing a specific element within the file (External Element References or EER) is not in scope of this document.

Depending on the business use case, this can be (reusing the terminology defined in the CAx-IF External References Rec. Pracs.):

- so-called ‘Classic’ or ‘Basic’ references:
  - an ISO STEP Part 21 (AP214, AP242) file containing the geometry of a part
  - an ISO JT file
  - any further standard geometry format (VDAFS, IGES, …)
  - any proprietary geometry format (CATIA V4,V5,V6, ProEngineer, NX, …)

- so-called ‘Extended’ or ‘Nested’ references:
  - another AP 242 XML file (see „nested“ / „fully shattered“ section 9.2)

The referencing of further, non geometrical files (like MSWord, PDF, …) as well as the referencing of Hardcopies is not in scope if this Recommended Practices document.

9.1 Template “DigitalFile”

Preprocessor Recommendations:

The referenced FormatProperties and CreationProperties can be reused within the XML file by all DigitalFiles to which they apply. Dito for the Units referenced by the SizeProperties.

If the DigitalFiles are mapped as Documents, the Content, Creation and Format Properties may be applied to the DigitalDocumentDefinition instead of the DigitalFile, if these values apply to all files associated to the same Document.

If the external files are exchanged in the same directory than the assembly XML file (for example within a zip file), ExternalItem.Source can be left unset.

Postprocessor Recommendations:

Analogous to the mechanism described in the CAx-IF External References Rec. Pracs.:

- the name of the target file is to be expected in ExternalItem.Id
- if ExternalItem does not exist, evaluate DigitalFile.Id (defined as OPTIONAL in the schema, it becomes mandatory in this case)
- the general behavior for evaluating ContentProperty, CreationProperty, FormatProperty and SizeProperty shall be ‘only for information’, and shall not cause the postprocessor to stop processing if the given content, creation system, format or size is not supported by the postprocessor. The postprocessor shall anyway load and import the file correctly.
Figure 27: Template "DigitalFile"

The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```
<CreationProperty uid="fcp--V5">
  <CreatingInterface>COM/FOX V5.5.2</CreatingInterface>
  <CreatingSystem>CATIA V5R19</CreatingSystem>
</CreationProperty>

<FormatProperty uid="ffp--JT">
  <CharCode>
    <ClassString>binary</ClassString>
  </CharCode>
  <DataFormat>
    <ClassString>ISO 14306 JT</ClassString>
  </DataFormat>
</FormatProperty>

<Unit uid="u--000000003">
  <Kind>
    <ClassString>SI system</ClassString>
  </Kind>
  <Name>
    <ClassString>byte</ClassString>
  </Name>
  <Prefix>
    <ClassString>kilo</ClassString>
  </Prefix>
```
```xml
<Unit>
  <Classification uid="gtc--3">
    <Class>
      <ClassString>solid geometry</ClassString>
    </Class>
  </Classification>
  <File xsi:type="n0:DigitalFile" uid="df--0000000001E60C660">
    <FileContent uid="fc--3">
      <DetailLevel>
        <CharacterString>production level</CharacterString>
      </DetailLevel>
      <GeometryTypes>
        <Classification uidRef="gtc--3"/>
      </GeometryTypes>
    </FileContent>
    <FileCreation uidRef="fcp--V5"/>
    <FileSize uid="fsp--3">
      <FileSize uid="fspp--3" xsi:type="n0:NumericalValue">
        <Definition>
          <PropertyDefinitionString>unit</PropertyDefinitionString>
        </Definition>
        <Unit uidRef="u--000000003"/>
        <ValueComponent>2.3</ValueComponent>
      </FileSize>
    </FileSize>
    <FileType>
      <ClassString>geometry</ClassString>
    </FileType>
    <Id>
      <Identifier uid="dfid--0000000001E60C660--18" id="bolt.jt" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
    </Id>
    <Locations>
      <ExternalItem uid="idal--0000000001E60C660--ei">
        <Id>
          <Identifier uid="idal--0000000001E60C660--ei" id="bolt.jt" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
        </Id>
        <Locations>
          <ExternalItem id="bolt.jt" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
        </Locations>
      </ExternalItem>
    </Locations>
  </File>
</Unit>
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity DigitalFile</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ClassificationSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileContent</td>
<td>OPTIONAL ContentProperty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileCreation</td>
<td>OPTIONAL CreationProperty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileFormat</td>
<td>OPTIONAL FormatProperty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileSize</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SizeProperty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileType</td>
<td>OPTIONAL ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>OPTIONAL Id</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 39: "DigitalFile" Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Locations</th>
<th>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ExternalItem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VersionId</td>
<td>OPTIONAL Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateTimeAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EffectivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of FileRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FrozenAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of FrozenAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of InformationUsageRightAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] ofModelPropertyAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyValueAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyValueAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WorkRequestAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of WorkRequestAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attribute recommendations**

- **Description**: the text or the set of texts that provides further information about the DigitalFile. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "Description" template.

- **FileContent**: the kind of geometric data stored into the DigitalFile. The value of this attribute need not be specified.

- **FileCreation**: details of the context of the creation of the DigitalFile => Reference to a CreationProperty. The value of this attribute need not be specified.

- **FileFormat**: data format of the DigitalFile => Reference to a FormatProperty. According to the CAX-IF recommendation the value of this attribute is mandatory, use "FormatProperty" Template (see 10.1) to fulfil it.
File Size: details of the size of the DigitalFile. The value of this attribute need not be specified.

FileType: type of the DigitalFile => Use ClassString if one of the values below is used; otherwise use “Class” Template (see 4.6.4).

According to the ISO AP214 Specification of document_type_property, where applicable, the following values shall be used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'geometry'</td>
<td>The file represents a shape model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘NC data’</td>
<td>The file represents numerical control data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘FE data’</td>
<td>The file represents finite element data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'sample data'</td>
<td>The file represents measured data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'process plan'</td>
<td>The file represents process planning data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'check plan'</td>
<td>The file represents quality control planning data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'drawing'</td>
<td>The file represents a technical drawing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'structured product data'</td>
<td>The document file contains product meta data and data related to product structure. This value shall be used for nested external references, when the referenced document relates to another BO Model XML file (see section 9.2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Id: the identifier for the DigitalFile. Although optional in the schema, this attribute shall be specified. Use IdentifierString type.

Locations: location of the DigitalFile. If empty, the file shall be located in the same directory as the BO Model XML file referencing to it.

Id: the identifier or set of identifiers for the version of the DigitalFile, the file version number. Use IdentifierString type. The value of this attribute need not be specified.

ApprovalAssignment: to assign an Approval to the DigitalFile. Use the “Approval” template; see 4.6.12 for details. The value of this attribute need not be specified.

DateTimeAssignment: to assign a DateTime to the DigitalFile. Use the “DateTime” template; see 4.6.11 for details. The value of this attribute need not be specified.

OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment: to assign an Organization or a PersonInOrganization to the DigitalFile. Use the “PersonInOrganization” template; see 4.6.14 for details. The value of this attribute need not be specified.

Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.
Table 40: "ExternalItem" Attributes

Attribute recommendations

- **Id**: the identifier for the ExternalItem (redundant to DigitalFile.Id). Use of IdentifierString type.

- **Description**: the text or the set of texts that provides further information about the ExternalItem. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use of "Description" template.

- **Source**: the relative path to the file, or an absolute path (for example in the case of an URL). Use IdentifierString type. The following symbols shall be used:
  - ‘/’ or ‘\’ to depict the directory structure
  - ‘.’ To depict the current directory
  - ‘..’ to move up to the next higher directory

- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

9.2 File Structure (monolithic/nested)

Analogous to the mechanism described in the CAx-IF Recommended Practices for External References, it is possible to exchange the multiple level structure either in one XML file (so-called monolithic structure), or to split each part node into a dedicated XML file (so-called nested structure).

The so-called ‘specified Reference’ Mechanism is taken over from the Chapter 5.5 and Annex D of VDA-Empfehlung 4956 "Product Data Exchange - Part 1: Assembly Data Exchange" 1.1 from Nov 2002 (see Annex C).

**Note**: this mechanism is not meant to be used for delta data supply: a nested structure shall be exchanged with all its components. Delta data supply is supported by the use of the so-called ‘Reference’ Mechanism of the above VDA recommendation. This mechanism is not in scope of this version of the Recommended Practices.

Special attention is needed in the case that the set of information contained in the XML files concerning the component parts goes beyond the minimum set of entities and attributes needed to define the external reference – for instance when user defined attributes are given as well. In the structure as illustrated in Figure 28 below, information concerning the Nut part would be stored redundantly in two XML files: the one for the Nut-Bolt Assembly and the one for the Rod Assembly. This opens the door for inconsistencies, especially since the information for the part is only complete when access the assembly file(s) referencing it.
Figure 28: Example for Nested Structure

Figure 29: Example for Nested Structure with additional part-level XML files
Hence it is recommended in this case to create an additional XML file for every part file, which carries all PDM-relevant data for this part in one place. The superordinate assembly XML files will reference the part’s XML file, which will in turn reference the actual part geometry file. Figure 29 illustrates the extended file structure.

This mechanism also provides the correct input for Long Term Archiving.

A referenced component is mapped in the XML File of its assembly(s) by:

1. mapping a minimum set of entities and attributes (subset of those mapped in the component XML file or in the monolithic mapping):
   - Part.id with idroleRef, idContextRef and PartType,
   - PartVersion.id (or ‘/ANY’ if the right version get computed at runtime by the PDM application),
2. mapping a reference to the component file (geometry file or intermediate XML file) between the PartView and the DigitalFile
3. in case the full positioning representation defined in chapter 7.3.2 is used: mapping a reference to the component file (geometry file or intermediate XML file) between the ExternalGeometricModel and the DigitalFile, and
4. mapping a dedicated Classification

**Preprocessor Recommendations:**

The part-level XML file describes the component part with all its master data. This master data should not be included in the assembly XML files placed above to avoid inconsistencies. Whether the part-level XML file is needed depends on the use case: in the area of Long Term Archiving, each part needs to be fully defined on its own, with its master data and geometry, which requires the additional XML file. For the exchange of an assembly structure with plain references to the component parts and no additional PDM information, it is optional.

To follow a reference from one XML file to another, the uniqueness of the parts is not ensured via the uids of the XML elements in the different XML files (the same part version could have a different uid in each XML file where it is defined or referenced), but via the **Identifier** elements.

Since ExternalGeometricModel that references to the XML shall have the same value in Id than the DigitalFile.Id and ExternalItem.Id (see recommendation in chapter 9.3.2), it doesn’t reference the geometry of the component, but the XML file where the component is described (nut.stpx).

For the purpose of the typical CAx-IF data exchange use case of these recommended practices, the use of ‘/ANY’ is not recommended.
Figure 30: Element Structure for Nested XML File (using CAx representation)
The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```xml
<ClassifiedAs>
  <Classification uidRef="vda--SpecifiedReference"/>
</ClassifiedAs>

<Class>
  <ClassString>specified reference</ClassString>
</Class>
</Classification>

<Part uid="p--000000001E720B30">
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="pid--000000001E720B30--id7" id="nut" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
  </Id>
  ...<Versions>
    <PartVersion uid="pv--000000001E720B30--id7">
      <Id>
        <Identifier uid="pvid--000000001E720B30--id7" id="/NULL" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
      </Id>
      <Views>
        <PartView xsi:type="n0:AssemblyDefinition" uid="pvv--000000001E720B30--id7">
          <ClassifiedAs>
            <Classification uidRef="vda--SpecifiedReference"/>
          </ClassifiedAs>
          ... </DefiningGeometry uidRef="egm--000000001E720B30"/>
          <DocumentAssignment xsi:type="n0:DocumentAssignment" uid="da--000000001A304330--id7">
            <AssignedDocument uidRef="df--000000001E720B30"/>
            <Role>
              <ClassString>mandatory</ClassString>
            </Role>
            </DocumentAssignment>
        </PartView>
        </Views>
      </PartVersion>
    </Versions>
  </Part>
</GeometricRepresentation>

<Id id="nut.stp"/>

...<ExternalFile uidRef="df--000000001E720B30"/>
</GeometricRepresentation>

<FormatProperty uid="ffp--AP242BOMODEL">
  <CharacterCode>
    <ClassString>UTF-8</ClassString>
  </CharacterCode>
  <DataFormat>
    <ClassString>ISO 10303-242 BO Model XML</ClassString>
  </DataFormat>
</FormatProperty>
</Classification>
```

© CAX Implementor Forum

http://www.cax-if.de/

http://www.cax-if.org/
<Class>
  <ClassString>assembly</ClassString>
</Class>
</Classification>
<CreationProperty uid="fcp--V5">
  <CreatingInterface>COM/FOX V5.5.2</CreatingInterface>
  <CreatingSystem>CATIA V5R19</CreatingSystem>
</CreationProperty>
<File xsi:type="n0:DigitalFile" uid="df--000000001E720B30">
  <FileContent>
    <Classification uidRef="gtc--2"/>
    <GeometryTypes/>
    <FileCreation uidRef="fcp--V5"/>
    <FileFormat uidRef="ffp--AP242BOMODEL"/>
    <FileType>
      <Classification>structured product data</Classification>
    </FileType>
    <Id>
      <Identifier uid="dfid--000000001E720B30--19" id="nut.stpx" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
    </Id>
    <Locations>
      <ExternalItem uid="idal--000000001E720B30--ei">
        <Id>
          <Identifier uid="idal--000000001E720B30--19" id="nut.stpx" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
        </Id>
        </ExternalItem>
    </Locations>
  </FileContent>
</File>
Just like in section 11.1 and 11.2 (CAx vs. PDM representation of DocumentAssignment, the references to the intermediate XML files may be also mapped as a managed document (if it is under version control):

Figure 31: Element Structure for Nested XML File (using PDM representation)
10 Document and File Properties

10.1 Template “FormatProperty”

The FormatProperty entity is the specification of characteristics of a File or of a DocumentDefinition that specify the format of the object.

The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes

```
Figure 32: Template “FormatProperty”
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity FormatProperty</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CharacterCode</td>
<td>OPTIONAL ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DataFormat</td>
<td>OPTIONAL ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>OPTIONAL Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SizeFormat</td>
<td>OPTIONAL RectangularSize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SuppliedObjectRelation</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SuppliedObjectRelationship</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 41: “FormatProperty” Attributes

Attribute recommendations

- **CharacterCode**: the computer application used to create the DigitalFile. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use ClassString type if one of the values below is used, otherwise use “Class” template (see 4.6.4). According to the ISO AP242 Specification, where applicable, the following values shall be used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CharacterCode</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘binary’</td>
<td>The document contains data in binary format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘IEC 61286’</td>
<td>The coded character set used to encode the document data according to IEC 61286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘ISO 646’</td>
<td>The coded character set used to encode the document data according to ISO 646; NOTE: The character set in ISO 646 is identical to the character set commonly known as ASCII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘ISO 6937’</td>
<td>The coded character set used to encode the document data is according to ISO/IEC 6937</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### CharacterCode | Explanation
---|---
‘ISO 8859-1’ | The coded character set used to encode the document data according to ISO 8859-1; NOTE: The character set in ISO 8859-1 is identical to the character set commonly known as LATIN-1. This is the default for STEP Part 21 files.

‘compressed ISO 8859-1’ | The coded character set used to encode the document data according to ISO 8859-1, where the file was compressed using the PKZip 2.04g format. NOTE: This value shall be used for STEP Part 21 files compressed per the Recommended Practices for STEP File compression (see Annex C).

‘UTF-8’ | The coded character set used to encode the document data according to UTF-8. NOTE: The character set in UTF-8 is the default encoding for XML files, including STEP BO Model XML files.

‘compressed UTF-8’ | The coded character set used to encode the document data according to UTF-8, where the file was compressed using the PKZip 2.04g format. NOTE: This value shall be used for STEP BO Model XML files compressed per the Recommended Practices for STEP File compression (see Annex C).

‘ISO 10646’ | The coded character set used to encode the document data according to ISO/IEC 10646.

- **DataFormat**: the convention that was used to structure the information in the characterized object. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use ClassString type if one of the values below is used, otherwise use “Class” template (see 4.6.4). According to the ISO AP242 Specification, where applicable, the following values shall be used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DataFormat</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘DXF’</td>
<td>The document contains data in Drawing Exchange File format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘IGES’</td>
<td>The document contains data in Initial Graphics Exchange Specification format</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1 [https://www.pkware.com/documents/APPNOTE/APPNOTE-6.2.0.txt](https://www.pkware.com/documents/APPNOTE/APPNOTE-6.2.0.txt)
DataFormat | Explanation
--- | ---
STEP AP214 CC06 | The document contains data in ISO 10303-214 Part21 format according to Conformance Class 06 (product structure only, the file contains no geometry, but references to external geometry files)
TIFF CCITT GR4 | The document contains data in TIFF CCITT GR4 format
VDAFS | The document contains data in VDAFS format
VOXEL | The document contains data in VOXEL format
CAD | The document contains native CAD data. When used, the Document Source Property (see 10.3) shall be used to convey specifics on the originating CAD system

Additionally, the following values are recommended, where applicable:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DataFormat</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ISO 10303-242 BO Model XML</td>
<td>The document contains data in ISO 10303-242 XML format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO 14306 JT</td>
<td>The document contains data in JT format</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Description**: the text or the set of texts that provides further information about the FormatProperty. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Description” template (see 4.6.7).
- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```
<FormatProperty uid="ffp--AP242BOMODEL">
  <CharCode>
    <ClassString>ISO 646</ClassString>
  </CharCode>
  <DataFormat>
    <ClassString>ISO 10303-242 BO Model XML</ClassString>
  </DataFormat>
</FormatProperty>
```

10.2 Template “ContentProperty”
The ContentProperty entity is the specification of characteristics precising the content of a File or of a DocumentDefinition.

The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes
**ContentProperty #1**

![Diagram of ContentProperty #1]

**Classification**

Figure 33: Template “ContentProperty”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DetailLevel</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GeometryTypes</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ClassificationSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Languages</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RealWorldScale</td>
<td>OPTIONAL NumericalValue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 42: “ContentProperty” Attributes

**Attribute recommendations**

- **Description**: the text or the set of texts that provides further information about the ContentProperty. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Description” template (see 4.6.7).

- **DetailLevel**: the level of detail that the DigitalFile provides. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use “Description” template (see 4.6.7). The following recommended values for this attribute are derived from MIL-STD-31000A (see reference in Annex C):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DetailLevel</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘conceptual level’</td>
<td>Conceptual level data relates to elements defining design concepts in graphic form, and includes appropriate information required for analysis and evaluation of those concepts. The data may consist of simple sketches/models, artist renderings and/or basic textual data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘developmental level’</td>
<td>Developmental level data relates to elements providing sufficient data to support the analysis of a specific design approach, the fabrication of prototype material for test or experimentation, and limited production by the original design organization or with assistance from the original design organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘production level’</td>
<td>Production level data relates to elements providing the design, engineering, manufacturing, inspection, packaging and quality assurance provisions information enabling the procurement or manufacture of an item. The level of detail shall be sufficient for a competent manufacturer to produce an</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
item, which duplicates the physical, interface, and functional characteristics of the original product, without additional design engineering effort or recourse to the current design activity. Production data shall reflect the approved, tested, and accepted configuration of the defined delivered item.

- **GeometryTypes**: details of the context of the creation of the DigitalFile. The value of this attribute need not be specified. As far as applicable, one or several of the values given below can be used. Use ClassString type if one of the values below is used, otherwise use “Classification” template (see 4.6.5):

**If the DigitalFile contains the geometry of a part:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GeometryTypes</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘wireframe geometry’</td>
<td>The document contains a three-dimensional model with precise definitions of wireframes or independent curves, meaning these curves are not edge curves of higher topological elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘surface geometry’</td>
<td>The document contains a three-dimensional shape with precise definitions of independent surfaces, meaning these surfaces are not faces of solids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘solid geometry’</td>
<td>The document contains a three-dimensional shape model in advanced boundary representation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘tessellated geometry’</td>
<td>The document contains a simplified shape representation that may consist of curves, surfaces and/or solids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘2D drawing’</td>
<td>The document contains a technical drawing. The drawing may have been derived from a 3D model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘PMI presentation’</td>
<td>The document contains Product and Manufacturing Information in a human-readable form, e.g. as 3D annotations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘PMI representation’</td>
<td>The document contains Product and Manufacturing Information in a semantic, machine-interpretable form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘implicit composite’</td>
<td>The document contains the implicit definition of a composite part as zero-thickness faces (plies) with boundaries and stacking order (laminate table)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘explicit composite’</td>
<td>The document contains the explicit representation of a solid composite part. This value is typically used together with ‘tessellated geometry’.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**If the DigitalFile contains another AP242 BO Model XML file (see „nested“ / „fully shattered“ section below):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GeometryTypes</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘assembly’</td>
<td>The document contains an assembly structure with reference to the assembled components and their transformation matrices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘assembly with mating elements’</td>
<td>The document contains an assembly structure including the mating components only, such as screws or rivets, with exact positioning information. This assembly representation is intended to be overlayed with the assembly structure for the main components</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• Note that the AP242 Standard gives a different list of recommended values for DetailLevel and GeometryTypes. These have, however, been taken over from earlier versions of AP214 and AP203 without further review and are deemed outdated. Hence it was agreed by the CAx-IF to include an updated list that better describes the characteristics of information typically exchanged. This list is currently being reviewed, and after final agreement, an AP242 maintenance issue will be created to update the textual definition in the standard accordingly.

The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```xml
mondsialtion uid="gtc--1">
    <Class>
        <ClassString>surface geometry</ClassString>
    </Class>
</Classification>
mondsialtion uid="gtc--3">
    <Class>
        <ClassString>solid geometry</ClassString>
    </Class>
</Classification>
    <File xsi:type="n0:DigitalFile" uid="df-000000001E720B30">
        <FileContent uid="fc-1">
            <DetailLevel>
                <CharacterString>development level</CharacterString>
            </DetailLevel>
            <GeometryTypes>
                <Classification uidRef="gtc--1"/>
                <Classification uidRef="gtc--3"/>
            </GeometryTypes>
        </FileContent>
    ...
</File>
```

10.3 Template “CreationProperty”

The CreationProperty entity is the specification of characteristics of a File or of a DocumentDefinition. It specifies the context of the creation of the object.

The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes

"Figure 34: Template “CreationProperty”"
### Entity CreationProperty

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CreatingInterface</td>
<td>OPTIONAL STRING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreatingSystem</td>
<td>STRING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OperatingSystem</td>
<td>OPTIONAL STRING</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 43: “CreationProperty” Attributes**

#### Attribute recommendations

- **CreatingInterface**: the computer application used to create the DigitalFile. The value of this attribute need not be specified.
- **CreatingSystem**: the computer application or the machine which is used to create the object that is characterized.
- **Description**: the text or the set of texts that provides further information about the CreationProperty. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "Description" template (see 4.6.7).
- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

#### The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```xml
<CreationProperty uid="fcp-V5">
  <CreatingInterface>COM/FOX V5.5.2</CreatingInterface>
  <CreatingSystem>CATIA V5R19</CreatingSystem>
</CreationProperty>
```

#### 10.4 Template “SizeProperty”

The SizeProperty entity is the specification of the size of a File or of a DocumentDefinition that specify the format of the object.

#### The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes

![Image of SizeProperty template]

**Table 44: “SizeProperty” Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity SizeProperty</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileSize</td>
<td>OPTIONAL ValueWithUnit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PageCount</td>
<td>OPTIONAL ValueWithUnit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Attribute recommendations

- **Description**: the text or the set of texts that provides further information about the SizeProperty. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "Description" template (see 4.6.7).

- **FileSize**: the size of a digitally stored document. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "NumericalValue" template (see 4.6.9).

Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```xml
<Unit uid="u--000000003">
  <Kind>
    <ClassString>SI system</ClassString>
  </Kind>
  <Name>
    <ClassString>byte</ClassString>
  </Name>
  <Prefix>
    <ClassString>kilo</ClassString>
  </Prefix>
</Unit>
<File xsi:type="n0:DigitalFile" uid="df--00000001E720B30">
  ...
  <FileSize uid="fsp--1">
    <FileSize id="fsp--1" xsi:type="n0:NumericalValue">
      <Definition>
        <PropertyDefinitionString>unit</PropertyDefinitionString>
      </Definition>
      <Unit uidRef="u--000000003"/>
      <ValueComponent>2.3</ValueComponent>
    </FileSize>
  </FileSize>
  ...
</File>
```

10.5 Template “DocumentFileProperty”

In the same way that in section 9 and 9.7 of the PDM Schema Usage Guide V4.3, the aim of this section is to specify how to attach a property to a document or a file.

The PropertyValueAssignment entity represents the attachment of the DocumentDefinition or File to the value represented via the “NumericalValue” (see 4.6.9) or “StringValue” templates (see 4.6.10).

The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes
Figure 36: Template "DocumentFileProperty"

List of attributes and recommendation are similar to the PartProperty template defined in chapter 6.2.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:** It is recommended that all the properties use the same PropertyValueAssignment with ‘Document property’ value used for the attribute Name inside the "NumericalValue" (see 4.6.9) or “StringValue” (see 4.6.10) templates.

**Postprocessor Recommendations:** None specified.

**Related Entities:** There are no specific related entities.

**The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)**

```xml
<File xsi:type="n1:DigitalFile" uid="df--000000001E5A89F0">
  <PropertyValueAssignment uid="pva--000000001E5A89F0-id1">
    <PropertyValue uid="pv--000000001E5A89F0-id1" xsi:type="n1:StringValue">
      <Definition>
        <PropertyDefinitionString>Specific property</PropertyDefinitionString>
      </Definition>
      <Name>
        <CharacterString>Document property</CharacterString>
      </Name>
      <ValueComponent>
        <CharacterString>Specific</CharacterString>
      </ValueComponent>
    </PropertyValue>
  </PropertyValueAssignment>
</File>
```
## 11 Document and File Association to Product Data

The scope of this section corresponds to section 10 of the PDM Schema Usage Guide V4.3.

Two alternatives are described in this chapter. Both are based on the entity DocumentAssignment (see below) and ExternalGeometricModel (see chapter 6.1).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity DocumentAssignment</th>
<th>Attribute type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AssignedDocument</td>
<td>AssignedDocumentSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ClassificationSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentPortion</td>
<td>OPTIONAL MultiLingualStringSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>OPTIONAL Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role</td>
<td>ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ActivityMethodAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AssignmentObjectRelationship</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of AssignmentObjectRelationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConditionAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ConditionAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateAndPersonAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DateTimeAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DateTimeAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of DocumentAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectivityAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EffectivityAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EventAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of EventAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FrozenAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of FrozenAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ModelPropertyAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of OrganizationOrPersonInOrganizationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyDefinitionAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyValueAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of PropertyValueAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of SecurityClassificationAssignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of TimeIntervalAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 45: "DocumentAssignment" Attributes**

### Attribute recommendations

- **AssignedDocument**: the assigned DocumentVersion or DigitalFile
- **Description**: the text or the set of texts that provides further information about the DocumentAssignment. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use "Description" template.
Id: the identifier for the DocumentAssignment. The value of this attribute need not be specified. Use IdentifierString type.

Role: the meaning of the assignment. Use ClassString if one of the values below is used, otherwise use “Class” template (see 4.6.4). Where applicable, the following values shall be used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'additional information'</td>
<td>The assigned document provides information that is relevant for the associated object, but is not a description of the associated object itself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'behaviour'</td>
<td>The assigned document specifies information about the behaviour of the associated object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'description'</td>
<td>The assigned document provides textual information for the associated object itself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'informative'</td>
<td>The assigned document may or may not be considered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'mandatory'</td>
<td>The associated object shall conform to the content of the assigned document. This value shall be used for the file that contains the geometry of the part.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'mathematical description'</td>
<td>The assigned document specifies the associated object by providing the algorithmic specification of its behaviour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'dimensioning standard'</td>
<td>The assigned document specifies the dimensioning standard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

As opposed to a managed 'Document as Product', an external file is not managed by the system - there is no capability for managed revision control or any document representation definitions for an external file.

If a file is under configuration control, it should be represented as a constituent of a document definition view/representation according to 'Document as Product'. In this case, it is actually the managed document that is under direct configuration control; the file is, in this way, indirectly under configuration control. A change to the file results in a change to the managed document (i.e., a new version) - the changed file would be mapped as a constituent of a view/representation definition of the new document version. A simple external reference alone is not configuration controlled; it is just an external file reference to product data.

11.1 Template "CAx Representation for DocumentAssignment"
This section is relevant when the files are not under configuration control.
In this case, the DocumentAssignment shall refer directly to the DigitalFile.
Figure 37: Template “CAx Representation for DocumentAssignment”
The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```xml
<Part uid="p--000000001E720B30">
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="pid--000000001E720B30--id7" id="nut" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
  </Id>
  ...
  <Versions>
    <PartVersion uid="pv--000000001E720B30--id7">
      <Id>
        <Identifier uid="pvid--000000001E720B30--id7" id="/NULL" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
      </Id>
      <Views>
        <PartView xsi:type="n0:AssemblyDefinition" uid="pvv--000000001E720B30--id7">
          <DefiningGeometry uidRef="egm--000000001E720B30"/>
          ...
          <DocumentAssignment xsi:type="n0:DocumentAssignment" uid="da--000000001E720B30--id7">
            <AssignedDocument uidRef="df--000000001E720B30"/>
            <Role>
              <ClassString>mandatory</ClassString>
            </Role>
            </DocumentAssignment>
        </PartView>
      </Views>
    </PartVersion>
  </Versions>
</Part>
<GeometricRepresentation uid="egm--000000001E720B30" xsi:type="n0:ExternalGeometricModel">
  <ContextOfItems uidRef="ccs--origin-2"/>
  <Id id="nut.jt"/>
  ...
  <ExternalFile uidRef="df--000000001E720B30"/>
</GeometricRepresentation>
<File xsi:type="n0:DigitalFile" uid="df--000000001E720B30"/>
  ...
  <Identifier uid="dfid--000000001E720B30--19" id="nut.jt" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
</File>
...
11.2 Template “PDM Representation for DocumentAssignment”

This section is relevant when the files are under configuration control, or if the geometry of a part is split into multiple DigitalFiles.

In this case, the DocumentAssignment shall refer to the DocumentVersion, rather than Document or DigitalDocumentDefinition.

In case the geometry of a part is split into multiple DigitalFiles, PartView.DefiningGeometry shall reference one of the DigitalFiles, while all of them will be referenced by DigitalDocumentDefinition.Files.

If all DigitalFiles associated to a DocumentDefinition have the same value for their Type, Content, Creation and Format properties, these can be stored in DocumentContent, DocumentCreation and DocumentFormat rather than redundantly in each DigitalFile as FileContent, FileCreation and FileFormat.
Figure 38: Template “PDM Representation for DocumentAssignment”
The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```xml
<Part uid="p--00000001EAAE870">
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="pid--00000001EAAE870--id7" id="nut" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
  </Id>
  ...
  <Versions>
    <PartVersion uid="pv--00000001EAAE870--id7">
      <Id>
        <Identifier uid="pvid--00000001EAAE870--id7" id="/NULL" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
      </Id>
      <Views>
        <PartView xsi:type="n0:AssemblyDefinition" uid="pvv--00000001EAAE870--id7">
          <DefiningGeometry uidRef="egm--000000001AA415B0"/>
        ...
      </Views>
    </PartVersion>
  </Versions>
</Part>

<GeometricRepresentation uid="egm--000000001AA415B0" xsi:type="n0:ExternalGeometricModel">
  <ContextOfItems uidRef="ccs--origin-2"/>
  <Id id="nut.jt"/>
  ...
  <ExternalFile uidRef="df--000000001EAAE870"/>
</GeometricRepresentation>

<Document uid="doc--000000001EAAE870">
  ...
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="docid--000000001EAAE870--id7" id="nut" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
  </Id>
  ...
  <Versions>
    <DocumentVersion uid="dv--000000001EAAE870">
      <Id>
        <Identifier uid="dvid--000000001EAAE870--id7" id="/NULL" idContextRef="o--000000178"/>
      </Id>
      <Views>
      </Views>
    </DocumentVersion>
  </Versions>
</Document>
```
12 User-Defined Attributes

In the same way that in the CAx-IF Recommended Practices for User Defined Attributes V1.2, the aim of this section is to specify how to transfer user defined attributes (UDA’s) in Computer Aided Design (CAD) systems.

12.1 Fundamental concepts

The approach used to transfer user defined attributes is the "general property" approach introduced in Part 41. It is based on the concept that an attribute (the key in a key-value pair) is defined once as a placeholder, and is then used to assign the actual values to the respective target elements as often as needed.

The main reference points in a STEP file for which such an attribute may be defined in the given context are:

- the entire part (PartView) using "PropertyValueAssignment" template (see 6.2)
- an instance of the part in an assembly (NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage) using PropertyValueAssignment template (see 6.2)
- a portion of the shape defining the part (AssemblyDefinition or PartView) using GeneralShapeDependentProperty template (see 6.3)

We will refer to these reference points as "Model Element" in figures below.

There are a number of pre-defined property types in STEP that may be used to store a user-defined attribute. In the context of this document, this includes:

- descriptive attributes ("StringValue" template see 4.6.10)
  - name and description
- measure values ("NumericalValue" template see 4.6.9)
  - name and value
  - name, value and unit

12.2 Template “GeneralProperty”

The PropertyDefinition entity will define a 'data field' or 'key' for a user defined attributes. This can then be used to assign a value to one or several elements in the model. The following rules apply to the PropertyDefinition.Id:

- it carries the name of the user defined attribute
- it is unique for the (combination of) elements it is assigned to

To assign a value for this attribute:

- create a PropertyValue with the "NumericalValue" (see 4.6.9) or "StringValue" templates (see 4.6.10).
- in the "NumericalValue" or "StringValue" template, link the PropertyValue to the PropertyDefinition with PropertyValue.Definition attribute.
- in the "NumericalValue" or "StringValue" template replicate the PropertyDefinition.Id in the PropertyValue.Name attribute.
The Instance Model: AP242 BO Model XML entities and attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENTITY</th>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AllowedUnits</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of UnitSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClassifiedAs</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id</td>
<td>Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PropertyType</td>
<td>ClassSelect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VersionId</td>
<td>Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApprovalAssignment</td>
<td>OPTIONAL SET[1:?] of ApprovalAssignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 46: "GeneralProperty" Attributes

Attribute recommendations

- The **Id** attribute is the text that represents the general property. Use “Identifier” template (see 4.6.6).
- The **PropertyType** attribute is the text defining the kind of property. Use ”Class” template (see 4.6.4).
- Other attributes than these are not covered by these Recommended Practices; their use is discouraged as it would depend on mutual agreements between data exchange partners.

**Preprocessor Recommendations:** The PropertyType must be set with the value ‘user defined attribute’.

**Postprocessor Recommendations:** None specified.

**Related Entities:** There are no specific related entities.

The Instance Model: STEP exchange file format (ISO10303 AP242 BO Model XML syntax)

```
<PropertyDefinition uid="pd--000000320">
  <Id id="Attribute A"/>
  <PropertyType>
    <ClassString>user defined attribute</ClassString>
  </PropertyType>
</PropertyDefinition>
```
12.3 Group of attributes and group of attributes values

In the same way that in section 5.2 of the CAx-IF Recommended Practices for User Defined Attributes V1.2, the aim of this section is to group user defined attributes on two semantic levels:

- **Groups of attributes**
  
  **Note** that systems handling user attributes in a way that all attributes with the same name have the same meaning may also define groups on this level. This level of grouping is listed here for completeness. In the context of the CAx-IF, groups of attributes will always be defined on the attribute level, see section below.

  To define a group of attributes in the sense that this grouping shall also be applied to all values of the respective attributes (e.g. the calculated weight, nominal weight and actual weight of a part), a PropertyDefinition will be created for that group, carrying the name of the group, and relating all PropertyDefinition instances, which are members of the group.

  The following rules apply to the PropertyDefinitionRelationship attribute values:
  
  - **Relating**: the PropertyDefinition that defines the group of attributes
  - **Related**: the PropertyDefinition that defines an attribute in that group
  - **RelationType**: 'decomposition'

- **Groups of attribute values**

  The approach to define a group of attribute values – i.e. which apply to the specific use of the respective attributes – is quite similar to the grouping of attributes themselves, only it will now happen on the PropertyValue level.

  All PropertyValue – the one defining the group and all of the ones defining the attribute values – need to reference the same model element.

  This means that only values for the same model element can be grouped.

  The following rules apply to the PropertyValueRelationship attributes:
  
  - **Relating**: the PropertyValue that defines the group of attribute values
  - **Related**: the PropertyValue that defines an attribute value in that group
  - **RelationType**: 'decomposition'
12.4 Specifying the target for the attribute

User defined attributes can be attached to the geometry in a STEP file at different levels of granularity, i.e. individual solids or surfaces, or entire parts. While all CAD systems support the definition of attributes at the part level, only some systems can handle attributes at the level of individual shape elements.

12.4.1 Attributes at the part level

To assign a user defined attribute to both individual parts and assemblies, it is recommended to use “PartProperty” template defined in chapter 6.2.

12.4.2 Attributes at component instances in an assembly

To assign a user defined attribute to a specific instance of a component within an assembly, the property needs to be attached to the assembly definition. If the instance in question is an immediate child of the assembly node, the attribute will be attached to the NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage, it is recommended to use “PartProperty” template defined in chapter 6.2 directly in the NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage entity.
12.4.3 Attributes at the shape level

To assign a user defined attribute to a shape or a portion of a part shape, it is recommended to use “ShapeDependentProperty” template defined in chapter 6.3.

12.5 Definition of attribute value

In the same way that in section 7 of the CAx-IF Recommended Practices for User Defined Attributes V1.2, the aim of this section is set up a property value for a property.

It is recommended to use the same value for PropertyDefinition.Id and PropertyValue.Name like it is shown in 12.2 with the “Attribute A” example.

There are three types of values identified:

- Descriptive / String attribute
- Value attribute
- Measure attribute
12.5.1 Descriptive / String attribute
A descriptive attribute stores an arbitrary text string in the ValueComponent attribute. As usual in STEP, any special characters in the name or description need to be encoded in Unicode.

To define a descriptive or string attribute, it is recommended to use the “StringValue” template defined in chapter 4.6.10.

12.5.2 Value attribute
A value attribute transports a general value which is not a piece of text, i.e. it is either
- an integer value
- a real value, which does not represent a measure value (see 12.5.3 below for those)
- a boolean value

To define an integer value attribute, it is recommended to use the “NumericalValue” template defined in chapter 4.6.9. Keep in mind that the ValueComponent is of type Integer.

To define a real value attribute, it is recommended to use the “NumericalValue” template defined in chapter 4.6.9.

To define a boolean value or real value attribute, it is recommended to use the “StringValue” template defined in chapter 4.6.10 with the value “TRUE” or “FALSE” for the ValueComponent attribute event if it is stored as a String. The value has to be correctly interpreted by the postprocessors.

12.5.3 Measure attribute
As in the STEP AP242 BO Model there are no specific entities to cover the measure representation, it is recommended to define the measure attribute as a String attribute (see chapter 12.5.1 above).

12.6 Transfer of Meta-Data for the User Defined Attributes
In the same way as in section 7.4 of the CAx-IF Recommended Practices for User Defined Attributes V1.2, the aim of this section is to give as an option the possibility to add additional information about an attribute, an attribute value, or group thereof.

Note that this is not supported for user defined attributes defined on shape elements (see section 13.4.3 above), since the PropertyValueAssignment cannot point to a ShapeDependentProperty.

Using the PropertyValueAssignment template it is possible to add even more information about an attribute, an attribute value, or group thereof. This may include CAD-system specific data, such as whether the attribute is relevant for a data management system or not. The identifier of the additional information is carried in the PropertyValue.Name attribute, and the value is transferred in the PropertyValue.ValueComponent.

The “meta data” will be defined as a “property of a property”, and they can be distinguished easily from the actual user defined attributes by two means:
- its PropertyValueAssignment will point to a PropertyValueAssignment, and not one of the model elements identified in section 6.2.
- its PropertyValueAssignment will have no associated PropertyDefinition
12.6.1 Designation of the Attribute Type

In order to transfer the name of the type for the user defined attribute as given in the originating system, add an additional property with the PropertyValueAssignment template with the following attribute characteristics:

- PropertyValue.name: 'attribute type designation'
- PropertyValue.ValueComponent: The designation of the attribute type as given in the native system

This shall be linked to the attribute value definition (PropertyValueAssignment) as shown in the figure above.

12.6.1.1 Attribute Value / Group Description

In order to transfer a description for the attribute (Note that this is a description about the attribute, in contrast to a descriptive attribute as defined in section 12.5.1), add an additional property with the PropertyValueAssignment template with the following attribute characteristics:

- PropertyValue.name: 'attribute description'
- PropertyValue.ValueComponent: Textual information about the attribute

This shall be linked to the PropertyValueAssignment of the UDA or a group of values as shown in the figure above.

13 Validation Properties

This chapter describes how to confirm the correctness of exchanged geometry information and assembly information compared to its source. The following exchange process is suggested to enable validation of exchanged information. It is optional to apply validation properties in exchange files.

Product data are created in a source system and shall be sent to a target system using the exchange format described in this document.
The source system derives – from its own representation of the product data - validation properties that reflect the main semantics of the product data. For the purpose of this document the following two types of validation properties are distinguished:

- **Assembly Validation Properties (AVP):** They provide a verification capability for product structure data where geometry is not present. Two properties are recommended: one to ensure that the number of instances found at each node is correct and another one to ensure that the position and orientation information for each instance is correct. See section 7 of the Recommended Practices for Geometric and Assembly Validation Properties (see reference in Annex C) and section 13.1, below for details.

- **Geometric Validation Properties (GVP):** They describe characteristics of a solid or surface model or of a collection of them and are assigned to parts and assemblies. See section 4 of the Recommended Practices for Geometric and Assembly Validation Properties (see reference in Annex C) and section 13.2, below for details.

These validation properties enable the verification of geometry and assembly information of received data sets. Values for these properties are added to the exchanged data set of the product structure, that is, to the representation that is sent to the target system. The target system reads the received data set including the source validation properties. It converts the data set, but not the validation properties, to the target representation. The target system derives the validation properties from this local representation after conversion using the same algorithms that are described here and that were applied at the source system.

The validation property values of the source and the target representations are then compared, manually or by a dedicated application. If the values are identical within an agreed tolerance, the semantics of the source product data were exchanged correctly to the target representation. With this, the validation of the exchange is completed successfully.

### 13.1 Assembly Validation Properties (Notional Solid, Number of Children)

Section 7 of the Recommended Practices for Geometric and Assembly Validation Properties (see reference in Annex C) specifies the semantics of two Assembly Validation Properties:

- **Number of Children:** For each node the number of instances or branches is recorded.

- **Notional Solids Centroid Position:** The positional information for each instance in the product structure is recorded, i.e. position and orientation of the coordinate systems for each child node relative to its parent. Note that this condition is not mathematically guaranteed by this methodology, but the chance of an incorrect position and orientation combining to give the correct result is extremely small.

These two validation properties allow verifying that the number of instances found at each node is correct and that the position and orientation information for each instance is correct.

The following sub-sections describe the representations of values of these properties in an AP242 BO XML exchange structure.

### 13.1.1 Number of Children

Each Part node which is a parent part of at least one other Part node will have a property attached to enumerate the actual number of child instances of that parent node.

This property shall be assigned to an AssemblyDefinition as user defined attribute, using the “PartProperty” template; see chapter 6.2. The property value counts the number of NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage instances that reference this AssemblyDefinition by their relating-attribute; see Figure 47, below.

The property value shall be instantiated according to the following description, which is depicted in the instance diagram in Figure 47 below.
All instances of type AssemblyDefinition that are used as relating AssemblyDefinition instances by one by one or more NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage instances will have a single PropertyValueAssignment of the PartProperty template assigned to it to represent the number of children count.

Only one NumericalValue shall be referenced by this PropertyValueAssignment, that is, there shall be only one element in the set of assignedPropertyValues. The name of this NumericalValue shall be 'number of children'. The same name shall appear as id of the PropertyDefinition of the GeneralProperty template. The propertyType of this PropertyDefinition shall be 'assembly validation property'. The GeneralProperty.propertyType shall be a string, not a Class. The Unit of the NumericalValue shall be 'each'.

![Diagram of Assembly Structure](image)

**Figure 47: Instantiation of AVP 'number of children' for 3 children**

### 13.1.2 Notional Solids Centroid Position

This property is similar to the geometric validation property "centroid" (see section 13.2): here, as well, a location property is defined for each sub-assembly. However, in this case the property is not calculated based on the real geometry of the product.

The details of this property are specified in section 7.2 of the Recommended Practices for Geometric and Assembly Validation Properties and repeated here.

For the top node and each intermediate node of a product structure, a notional solid is assumed within the child node of each child instance of that node. Using the positional and orientation relationship for each child instance, a centroid position can be calculated for the combined set of notional solids within the set of child instances.

The notional solid will be a cube of size 10 x 10 x 10. The notional solid will be positioned with its centroid at (10.0, 10.0, 10.0) of the coordinate system of the child node. Note that the actual size and shape of the notional solid will not, in fact, affect the overall result. The key data is the centroid position and the assumption that the volume of the notional solid in each child node is the same. Mathematically, the calculated point is the mean of the set of points at (10.0, 10.0, 10.0) within the child nodes.

Note that in contrast to an actual solid centroid, the notional solid itself is not in the STEP file – it is just a convention. Thus, it has to be ensured that the correct geometrical context is
used for the notional solids centroid position, in order to guarantee that the units are applied correctly.

The child node may be a leaf node of the overall assembly or another intermediate node within the sub-assembly. Each case is treated in the same way. Even though the child node might be an intermediate node with no actual geometry defined, a notional solid will be assumed for the purpose of this calculation.

The notional centroid for each sub-assembly is influenced only by the notional solids in each of its direct child nodes.

The property value shall be instantiated according to the following description, which is depicted in the instance diagram in Figure 48, below.

All instances of type AssemblyDefinition that are referenced as relating AssemblyDefinition instances by one or more NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage instances will have a single CentreOfMass assigned to it. The CentreOfMass represents the notional solid centroid position. The child nodes that this centroid position is valid for are those Occurrences that are referenced by the NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage.related attributes.

The role of the CentreOfMass shall be 'assembly validation property'. Its id shall be 'notional solids centroid'. An AssemblyDefinition instance shall be assigned at maximum one instance of CentreOfMass with this id.

The CentreOfMass.centrePoint is a CartesianPoint with exactly three coordinate values of type REAL. The CartesianPoint defines the calculated centroid for the notional solids assumed for each child node.

To denote the coordinate space of the CartesianPoint a GeometricCoordinateSpace is instantiated with dimensionCount equal three, as this is a centroid in three dimensional space.

The unit that the coordinate values are measured in shall be provided as string-value in the attribute CentreOfMass.definedIn.unit.

It is up to the pre-processor to provide a unique id for the GeometricCoordinateSpace.

Figure 48: Instantiation of AVP ‘notional solids centroid’
13.2 Geometric Validation Properties (Repeated from referenced Parts)

Geometric Validation Properties (GVP) describe characteristics of a solid or surface model or of a collection of them. The original specification of GVPs is in section 4 of the “Recommended Practices for Geometric and Assembly Validation Properties” (see reference in Annex C) for details. The most important information is repeated here.

The validation properties defined in this document represent different types of measures: for volume, for area, and for length. Each of these requires a correct definition of the applied unit of measure in the XML file.

Geometric Validation Properties in an AP242 BO Model XML file can only be attached to parts or assemblies, not to geometry, as the representation of detailed geometry is out of scope of the AP242 BO Model.

Geometric Validation Properties will be defined dependent on the class of geometry:

- Solids: volume, surface area, and centroid;
- Surfaces: surface area, and centroid;
- Curves: curve length, and centroid.

This means that if a model contains a solid, independent surfaces, and independent curves, there will be three different centroids given in the validation properties: one for each class.

**Note:** Geometric Validation Properties shall be computed solely off the part geometry. They should not take any Supplemental Geometry into account, since not all target applications support Supplemental Geometry. In addition, Supplemental Geometry may contain unbounded elements.

13.2.1 Validation Properties for Solid Geometry

13.2.1.1 Volume

Volume specifies the amount of space occupied by the solid model as measured in cubic units. During an exchange this GVP can be used to validate the success of creating an equivalent solid via the translation.

Figure 50 illustrates the instances required to specify in the XML file the volume property value of the original part, as calculated in the native system.
13.2.1.2 **SurfaceArea**

Surface area specifies the area measurement of the surface of an entire solid. By default, this will include any voids in the model. Figure 51 below illustrates the relevant entities and their mandatory attributes used in the assignment of the surface area validation property.

**Note:** Since CATIA calculates the 'wetted area' (i.e. voids will not be taken into account) instead of the total surface area, the validation mechanism will report a 'false error' when exchanging a model with voids in it between a CATIA-based and a non-CATIA-based system. Therefore, when exporting validation properties from a CATIA-based system, the name of the NumericalValue (see Figure 51) shall be 'wetted surface area' instead of 'surface area'.

---

**Figure 50:** GVP ‘volume’ of 3.4 cubicmetre assigned to a Part or Assembly

**Figure 51:** GVP ‘surface area’ of 2.3 squaremetre assigned to a Part or Assembly
13.2.1.3 Solid Centroid

A centroid is the center of volume of a geometric solid model; in the AP242 BO Model this corresponds to the entity CentreOfMass. The position of the centroid is an invariant datum relative to the model origin, thus during an exchange, this can be used to validate the positional integrity of any geometric translations.

Figure 52 illustrates the relevant entities and their mandatory attributes used in the assignment of a solid centroid for validation. Instantiation follows the same principles as for the AVP 'notional solids centroid'; see 13.1.2.

13.2.2 Validation Properties for Surface Geometry

13.2.2.1 Independent Surface Area

The designation “independent” for a surfaces means that it is not a face of a solid. Such surfaces can occur as constituents of a surface model (open or closed shell), or as additional elements in a solid model. The total area of these surfaces in a model can be validated to ensure completeness of the exchanged data.

The instantiation follows the exact same pattern as defined in section 13.2.1.2, Figure 51, using the following magic strings instead:

- NumericalValue.name = “independent surface area”
- GeneralProperty.id = “independent surface area”.

13.2.2.2 Independent Surface Centroid

In addition to the total area of independent surfaces (see section above), their positioning is of interest as well. This can be validated using the combined centroid of all independent surfaces in the model.

The instantiation follows the exact same pattern as defined in section 13.2.1.3, Figure 52, using the following magic strings instead:

- CentreOfMass.id = “independent surface centroid”.

Figure 52: GVP ‘centroid’ or CentreOfMass assigned to a Part or Assembly
13.2.3 Validation Properties for Curve / Wireframe Geometry

13.2.3.1 Independent Curve Length

The designation “independent” for a curve means that it is not the edge curve of a surface or solid. Such curves can occur as constituents of a wireframe model, or as additional elements in a surface or solid model. The total length of these curves in a model can be validated to make sure no information was lost during transfer. Use cases for this are electric harnesses and piping installations, where independent curves are used as center curves of wires or pipes.

The instantiation follows the exact same pattern as defined in section 13.2.1.2, Figure 51, using the following magic strings instead:

- NumericalValue.name = “independent curve length"
- GeneralProperty.id = “independent curve length”.

The values of NumericalValue.valueComponent and Unit.name in Figure 51 will need to be changed according to the use case at hand, that is, to the length of a curve and a length unit instead of the area of a surface and an area unit.

13.2.3.2 Independent Curve Centroid

In addition to the total length of independent curves in a model (see previous section), their position is of interest as well. The independent curve centroid shall store the combined centroid of all independent curves at the part level. Use cases for this are electric harnesses and piping installations, where an independent curve is used as the center curve of the wire or pipe.

The instantiation follows the exact same pattern as defined in section 13.2.1.3, Figure 52, using the following magic strings instead:

- CentreOfMass.id = “independent curve centroid”.

13.2.4 Bounding Box

The bounding box is a means of providing information about the model extent and location. It can be used as a further way of validating the position of the model by providing the space it fits into, in addition to the centroid. As there are many different ways to define a bounding box, the CAx-IF has agreed on a common definition, which uses two three-dimensional points (minimum X, minimum Y, minimum Z) and (maximum X, maximum Y, maximum Z).

Figure 53: Bounding Box defined by two opposing corner points

The detailed definition is given in section 4.9 of the Recommended Practices for Geometric and Assembly Validation Properties (see Annex C).
The instantiation follows the same pattern as defined in section 13.2.1.3, Figure 52; however there will be two instances of CentreOfMass to the same instance of Part or Assembly, both using the same magic string:

- CentreOfMass.id = “bounding box corner point”.

14 Outlook

As written in the introductory sections of this document, the Recommended Practices for AP242 BO Model XML Assembly Structure has been written to guide implementations of the new BO Model XML format for the well-established exchange of product and assembly information. This first version of the document focuses on the area of CAD-PDM exchange and thus covers only a limited scope.

Starting from this core scope, it is very likely that the number as well as the scope of AP242 BO Model XML implementations will increase in the future. Functionalities currently listed as out of scope, such as Composites, Kinematics and advanced PDM capabilities such as Configuration Management, will be added to future versions of this document, or covered in separate documents referencing this one where meaningful.

Since meta data and product structures are key data for almost all businesses and life cycle processes, it is clear that the agreements documented in this document have to be discussed with and accepted by all involved communities; users and implementors alike. User groups and implementor forums as described in 14.2 below provide the platform for this. Also, in order to guarantee process stability, the documented agreements have to remain stable.

This document has been written with exactly this in mind – it is expected to grow, i.e. add new capabilities over time, but not to change in the already documented areas. It will be harmonized with upcoming related documents.

14.1 “Model-based” approach for future versions of this document

A model based approach for capturing and interrelating recommended practices should be used, in order to allow:

- Easy publication through dynamic web sites;
- Easy change management and consistency with automated regeneration of documents from a valid model;
- Allow computer aided verification and validation

Principles introduced in the PDM-IF:

- Definition of use cases called DEX, describing the business need with templates vocabulary
- Definition of building block mechanism called templates, describing a recommendation of use on a subset of the STEP AP242 BO Model entities

In order to prepare the future versions of this document, the concept of templates has been used (see a list of available templates in chapter 15). Next stage will be the creation of DEXs for automatic V&V.
14.2 Planned PDM-IF and PDM Recommended Practices

At the moment (fall of 2014), efforts are being taken to launch a PDM Implementor Forum (PDM-IF).

The first goal of the PDM-IF is to develop international PDM interoperability recommended practices, answering the needs of manufacturing industries with a set of consistent standards providing PDM information models and associated recommended practices for PDM interoperability. These documents shall cover the full product life cycle, from concept phase, to support and retirement and should be common to the different disciplines, systems, structures, etc. They will be managed consistently over time by ensuring upward compatibility with legacy PDM standards and existing PDM data repositories. The intent is to base the activities on an open web based infrastructure and to provide common guidelines for the PDM domain of the following STEP modular Application Protocols: AP209, AP233, AP242, AP210, OASIS PLCS and AP239.

It has not been decided yet whether in this context, ownership of this document will be handed over from the CAx-IF to the PDM-IF at a future point in time to ensure that all PDM-related guidelines are maintained by the same community.

The PDM-IF will comprise a User Group and an Implementor Group. The following figure, taken from the PDM-IF Whitepaper, illustrates the setup:

![Figure 54: Proposed PDM-IF Organization and Governance](image)

The User Group represents the industry stakeholders and ensures that the industry needs are taken into account with the correct priorities by the standardisation activities as well as with the implementation testing. The User Group defines the business scenarios and the implementation roadmap. The roadmap is based on priorities, standards availability and the Implementor Group’s recommendations.

The Implementor Group represents user organizations, PLM vendors and system integrators and is in charge of developing the recommended practices to answer the industry needs and of testing the implementations.
### 15 List of Templates

This chapter gives a summary of the templates described in this document:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Paragraph</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Template “ExchangeContext”</td>
<td>4.6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “Organization”</td>
<td>4.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “Unit”</td>
<td>4.6.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “Class”</td>
<td>4.6.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “Classification”</td>
<td>4.6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “Identifier”</td>
<td>4.6.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “Description”</td>
<td>4.6.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “ViewContext”</td>
<td>4.6.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “NumericalValue”</td>
<td>4.6.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “StringValue”</td>
<td>4.6.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “DateTime”</td>
<td>4.6.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “Approval”</td>
<td>4.6.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “Person”</td>
<td>4.6.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “PersonInOrganization”</td>
<td>4.6.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “Part”</td>
<td>5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “Assembly”</td>
<td>5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “GeometricModel”</td>
<td>6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “PartProperty”</td>
<td>6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “ShapeDependentProperty”</td>
<td>6.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “SingleOccurrence”</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “SpecifiedOccurrence”</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “Simplified Positioning Representation”</td>
<td>7.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “Document”</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “DigitalFile”</td>
<td>9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “FormatProperty”</td>
<td>10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “ContentProperty”</td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “CreationProperty”</td>
<td>10.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “SizeProperty”</td>
<td>10.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “DocumentFileProperty”</td>
<td>10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “CAx Representation for DocumentAssignment”</td>
<td>11.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “PDM Representation for DocumentAssignment”</td>
<td>11.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template “GeneralProperty”</td>
<td>12.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Annex A  XML Schema derivation from BO Model EXPRESS Schema

This annex is derived from the Annex B of ISO/TS 10303-3001:2014 ‘Business object model: Managed model based 3D engineering business object model’, and has been corrected (crossed text) and completed (text in italic) to cover all aspects.

A.1 General concepts

This section describes the general concepts for the derivation of the XML Schema from the corresponding BO Model EXPRESS Schema. These concepts were used to create the XML Schema Definition from the EXPRESS Schema using the configuration directives of ISO 10303-28.

A.1.1 General concepts

In general, the XML name derived from a BO MODEL EXPRESS identifier is the BO MODEL EXPRESS identifier modified with following rules:

- Names of XML tags elements and attributes shall be written using upper camel case.
- For identifiers that will be represented by XML element attributes lower camel case shall be used.
- This convention requires removing underscore characters " _" from EXPRESS names.

The structure of the EXPRESS model is preserved in XML:

- No changes in cardinality
- One EXPRESS instance is represented by one XML instance
  - No aggregation of several EXPRESS entities into one XML element
  - No splitting of one EXPRESS entity into several XML elements

Reverting the direction of associations is allowed:

- Does not violate the principle of structure preservation

```xml
<xsd:complexType name="AP242DataContainer">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="cmn:DataContainer">
      <xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xsd:element name="Part" type="Part" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:choice>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```
A.1.2 Mapping of EXPRESS entity data types

For each EXPRESS entity data type declaration the XML Schema contain the definition of a new complex type corresponding to that EXPRESS entity data type.

```xml
<xsd:complexType name="PartVersion">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="cmn:BaseObject">
      <!-- the attributes of the entity -->
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

For each entity data type that does not inherit from another entity data type a new ComplexType will be declared. For each EXPRESS attribute appearing in the entity declaration, the ComplexType shall contain one corresponding element.

By default, each complexType is based on cmn:BaseObject (defined in defined in common.xsd).

For each entity data type that does not inherit from another entity data type, the complexType is based on cmn:BaseRootObject (defined in common.xsd). The BaseRootObjects occur as top level elements in the DataContainer an cannot be contained by any other element.

```xml
<xsd:complexType name="Part">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="cmn:BaseRootObject">
      <!-- the attributes of the entity -->
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

In addition to the declaration of simple entity data types EXPRESS allows the specification of entity data types as subtypes of other entity data types. This establishes an inheritance relationship (subtype/supertype) and through successive subtype/supertype relationships an inheritance graph in which every instance of a subtype is also an instance of its supertype(s). An entity declared by using inheritance relationships with supertypes is said to be a complex entity data type.

```xml
<xsd:complexType name="ActualActivity">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="Activity">
      <!-- the attributes of the entity -->
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

A complex entity data type inherits not only the EXPRESS attributes and rules appearing in the EXPRESS entity declarations of all of its supertypes, but also all the EXPRESS attributes and rules they inherit. So subtype entities are specialisations of any of their supertypes, where a specialisation means a more constrained form of the original declaration. The mapping of complex entity data types uses the technique of derivation by extension for those entity data types that do not inherit from multiple supertypes. When a complex type is derived by extension, its effective content model is the content model of the base type plus the content model specified in the type derivation.
EXPRESS allows the declaration of entities that are not intended to be directly instantiated. For each EXPRESS entity data type declared to be ABSTRACT, the Schema shall contain an XML element declaration corresponding to the EXPRESS entity data type. The XML element shall be declared to be abstract so it cannot be used in a XML instance document.

There are some exceptions to the mapping described above that do not require one-to-one mapping between EXPRESS entity and XML Schema ComplexType:

- EXPRESS entities that have equivalents that are already defined in XML Schema, e.g., dateTime, duration, language
- Utilizing XML Schema constructs rather than one-to-one mapping e.g., Multilanguage support

A.1.3 Mapping of named data types

For each defined EXPRESS data type with a final underlying type of STRING, INTEGER, REAL, NUMBER or BOOLEAN the XML schema contains a new element using the corresponding built-in types of XML schema.

A.1.4 Mapping of SELECT data types

A SELECT data type has a select list where each item shall be an entity data type or a defined data type. SELECT data types that are used in EXPRESS are mostly created as cmn:Reference IDREF(s) XML data types. In some cases (like in AxisPlacementOrTransformationSelect for AxisPlacement and CartesianTransformation, or in ClassSelect for ClassString) some elements of the SELECT type are mapped by containment. Therefore it is not needed to create SELECT type definitions. In order to make resolving of IDREF(s) cmn:Reference and containments for SELECT types possible for each SELECT type, an XML Schema Group definition shall be created. It shall contain the list of items that belong to the given SELECT type. Groups might be used for validation purposes.

```xml
<xsd:group name="TransformationSelect">
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:element name="CartesianTransformation" type="CartesianTransformation"/>
    <xsd:element name="GeometricRepresentationRelationship" type="cmn:Reference"/>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>
```

A.1.5 Mapping of EXPRESS attributes

For each EXPRESS explicit attribute of an EXPRESS entity data type declaration the corresponding ComplexType in the XML Schema Definition shall contain an element definition. In case of EXPRESS attributes that have simple semantics, XML elements shall be used. (e.g., name, description, role, relationType, versionId etc.).

There are four main cases for EXPRESS attribute mapping:

- Single attribute
  - by containment
  - by reference
• Aggregation attribute (SET, BAG, LIST, ARRAY)
  – by containment
  – by reference

The order of elements is fixed - this shall be realized with XML Schema sequence grouping.

Except in very rare exceptions like Identifier.role (mapped to idRoleRef) and Identifier.identificationContext (mapped to idContextRef), the name of the XML element shall be the name of the EXPRESS entity written in upper camel casing style. EXPRESS attributes that are mapped to XML attributes shall be written in lower camel casing style.

If the EXPRESS attribute is declared to be OPTIONAL, then the minOccurs pattern of the XML element shall be declared to be "0". The type of the XML element shall be declared according to the data type of the EXPRESS attribute.

```xml
<xsd:complexType name="Activity">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="cmn:BaseRootObject">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="Requestor" type="DateAndPersonOrganization" minOccurs="0"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

For each inverse attribute of an EXPRESS entity data type declaration the associated complexType shall contain an XML element declaration corresponding to the EXPRESS attribute. The name of the XML element shall be the name of the data type of the EXPRESS inverse attribute. The type of the XML element shall be declared according to the data type of the EXPRESS inverse attribute.

Mandatory simple INVERSE attributes (like ApprovingPersonOrganization. authorizedApproval of type Approval), as all INVERSE attributes, shall not be mapped to the XSD, but shall be used as an indicator to apply the XML containment rules (i.e. to define ApprovingPersonOrganization as being contained into Approval). For more details, see below.

The re-declaration of EXPRESS attributes shall have no effect on XML schema declaration.

A.1.5.1 EXPRESS attribute types corresponding to XML complex type

The XML element corresponding to an EXPRESS attribute whose data type is an EXPRESS entity data type shall be mapped in one of following ways:

- XML element type shall be the name of a complexType defined in XML Schema. Element in XML document shall be instantiated inside a parent element i.a. attribute shall be represented by containment.
- XML element type shall be defined as type="cmn:Reference" IDREF(s). The IDREF attribute shall reference the uid attribute of an XML complexType corresponding to the EXPRESS entity data type of the attribute.

The XML attribute element corresponding to an EXPRESS attribute whose data type is a SELECT data type shall reference the XML group defined for the SELECT be declared to have type IDREF in the XML schema declaration.

```xml
<xsd:complexType name="AssemblyOccurrenceRelationship">
  <xsd:extension base="ViewOccurrenceRelationship">
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element name="Placement" minOccurs="0"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
  </xsd:extension>
</xsd:complexType>
```
cmn:Reference in XML is untyped. To map the type of the referenced object from the EXPRESS schema, xsd:ref and xsd:keyref definitions are defined in the XSD. Based on XPATH, each xsd.keyref definition lists all the places where the referenced object may occur together with the xsd:ref of the referenced Entity. There is one xsd:ref per Entity and one xsd:keyref per attribute of type cmn:Reference plus one xsd:keyref per Entity. This allows automatic consistency check for XML file during XML Schema validation.

A.1.5.2 EXPRESS attribute types corresponding to XML simple type

The XML element corresponding to an EXPRESS attribute whose data type is a defined data type with a final underlying type of STRING, INTEGER, REAL, NUMBER, or BOOLEAN shall be declared to have the XML type corresponding to the underlying type of the defined data type in the EXPRESS type declaration, if not otherwise specified in a configuration directive:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EXPRESS attribute type</th>
<th>ISO XML element type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NUMBER, REAL</td>
<td>xs:double</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTEGER</td>
<td>xs:integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STRING</td>
<td>xs:string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOOLEAN, LOGICAL(*)</td>
<td>xs:boolean</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(*) The handling of the value UNKNOWN is not specified yet.

EXPRESS ENUMERATION types are mapped to a simpleType having a <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">. Each value element is defined within it as <xsd:enumeration value="..."/>.

If an EXPRESS attribute type REAL is mapped to an XML element type STRING the format of this content string shall be according IEEE 754-1985.

A.1.5.3 Attributes with aggregate data types

Aggregations (by containment) are mapped as a sequence of elements with the EXPRESS type as name and type:

```xml
<Part uid="p--000000001E720B30">
  ...
  <Versions>
    <PartVersion uid="pv--000000001E720B30--id7">
      ...
      <Views>
        <PartView xsi:type="n0:AssemblyDefinition" uid="pvv--000000001E720B30--id7">
          ...
          </PartView>
        <PartView xsi:type="n0:AssemblyDefinition" uid="pvv--000000001E720B30--id8">
          ...
          </PartView>
      </Views>
      ...
    </PartVersion>
  </Versions>
</Part>
```
Aggregations (by reference) are represented as a sequence of elements with the EXPRESS type as name and "cmn:Reference" as type:

```
<xsd:complexType name="Activity">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="cmn:BaseRootObject">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="PossibleMethods" minOccurs="0"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

EXPRESS provides four kinds of aggregation data types: ARRAY, LIST, BAG and SET. These data types have as their domains collections of values of a given base data type where the base data type can be a simple type, a named type or another aggregation type.

The XML element corresponding to an aggregate valued EXPRESS attribute shall be declared to be of type "IDREFS" in case of reference or for containment usage. In both cases, they shall make use of maxOccurs="unbounded".

Caution: "IDREFS" or maxOccurs="unbounded" most match the EXPRESS Type BAG, since redundant values are allowed. The uniqueness of the elements (like in a SET), the indexing of the elements (like in a LIST or an ARRAY) and OPTIONAL ARRAY values are not supported.

Multi-Dimensional Aggregates are mapped as One-Dimensional, for example: MomentsOfInertia.InertiaValue of kind ARRAY[1:3] OF ARRAY[1:3] OF NumericalValue; is mapped to:

```
<xsd:element name="NumericalValue" type="NumericalValue" maxOccurs="9"/>
```

An exception is made for CartesianTransformation.RotationMatrix defined as LIST[2:3] OF LengthMeasure, which is mapped to xsd:string for reasons of compactness.

In both cases, the separator is a blank and the ordering of the elements is as following: xx xy xz yx yy yz zx zy zz

Some One-Dimensional Aggregates have been also mapped to xsd:string for reasons of compactness:

- Direction.DirectionRatios (LIST[2:3] OF REAL)
- CartesianPoint.Coordinates (LIST[2:3] OF LengthMeasure)

Here the order is obvious: x y z

A.1.6 Not mapped EXPRESS Constructs
The UNIQUE, WHERE and global rules are not mapped to XML.
A.1.7 Containment and referencing rules

An EXPRESS attribute whose data type is an EXPRESS entity data type shall be mapped in one of the following ways:

- By containment
- By reference

Containment is the preferred approach

- It is recommended to use containment wherever possible
- Reference should only be used for elements that are commonly reused

Motivation:

- To place as much information as possible about an object within it highly increases human readability
- Less complexity with script based analysis (e.g. XSLT).
- Increases the XSD validation quality

Reference mapping rules:

- Master data - for elements defined directly under XML root element e.g., Organization, Person
- Structure elements - for elements that are reused and referenced as structure elements e.g., Documents, Parts

```
<xsd:complexType name="ActivityAssignment">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="cmn:BaseObject">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="AssignedActivity" type="cmn:Reference"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Containment mapping rules:

- Simple attributes e.g., String values
- Elements that cannot exist standalone but depend from another object and cannot be reused e.g., DateTime, TranslatedString, PropertyValue
- Grouping of elements in master-revision pattern, like Part -> PartVersion, Document -> DocumentVersion (usually the EXPRESS schema defines a mandatory INVERSE attribute for the contained element, for example PartVersion.versionOf)
- For relationships containment shall be performed along the relating attribute (see below)
- For EXPRESS SET attributes that shall be represented as containment plural form shall be changed to singular form, e.g., ConcernedOrganizations -> ConcernedOrganization. It is needed to keep semantics correctness (maxOccurs="unbounded")
- A contained element cannot be defined as RootObject
- If a containment is made along an attribute of kind SELECT type, the above rule shall apply to all members of the SELECT type

```
<xsd:complexType name="AssemblyJoint">
```

© CAx Implementor Forum http://www.cax-if.de/ http://www.cax-if.org/
Elements represented by containment cannot be defined as BaseRootObject

A.1.8 Change of Direction for Associations

For various associations in EXPRESS, the direction has been inverted:

- The original attribute is omitted
- A new attribute is added to the originally reference entity

ENTITY MeasuredCharacteristic

...  
measureActivity : OPTIONAL MeasureActivitySelect;
...

TYPE MeasureActivitySelect = SELECT
{Activity,...

<xsd:complexType name="Activity" abstract="true">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="cmn:BaseRootObject">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="MeasuredCharacteristic" type="MeasuredCharacteristic" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>

The advantage of this 'reverse' mapping is to see all the characteristics (like dates, approvals, projects, persons and organizations, properties, ...) of one object at one single place: within the object.

A.1.8.1 Entities of kind Relationship

Entities of kind ...Relationship, which are instantiated once in EXPRESS and reference one or many relating instance, are mapped (and instantiated separately) in the relating object. The relating attribute is omitted.

The related attribute is mapped by reference.

Example:

ENTITY ActivityRelationship;
...
relating : Activity;
related : Activity;
...
END_ENTITY;

<xsd:complexType name="Activity" abstract="true">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="cmn:BaseRootObject">
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="ActivityRelationship" type="ActivityRelationship" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>
A.1.8.2 Entities of kind Assignment

Entities of kind Assignment, which are instantiated once in EXPRESS and reference one or many ‘assignedTo’ instances, are mapped (and instantiated separately) in each assignedTo object.

The assignedTo attribute is omitted. The assignedXxx attribute is mapped by reference.

Example:

ENTITY DateTimeAssignment;
    id : OPTIONAL IdentifierSelect;
    description : OPTIONAL DescriptorSelect;
    classifiedAs : OPTIONAL SET[1:?] OF Classification;
    role : ClassSelect;
    assignedDate : DateTimeString;
    assignedTo : SET[1:?] OF DateTimeAssignmentSelect;
END_ENTITY;

is mapped to XML in each member element of DateTimeAssignmentSelect (they are about 130!), for example in Activity:

<xsd:complexType name="Activity" abstract="true">
    <xsd:complexContent>
        <xsd:extension base="cmn:BaseRootObject">
            <xsd:sequence>
                ...
                <xsd:element name="DateTimeAssignment" type="DateTimeAssignment"
                    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
            </xsd:sequence>
        </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>

The semantic is nearly the same (at least within the scope of a single XML file): the SET attribute DateTimeAssignment.AssignedTo can be computed out of all DateTimeAssignments where DateTimeAssignedDate point to the same DateTimeString.

A.1.9 Representation of Id Attribute

Two representations are supported:

- Compact representation of the most used variant „simple string“
- Optimized representation for the other variants
  - Associated context and/or role
  - Multiple identifiers
<xsd:complexType name="Id">
  <xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:element name="Identifier" type="Identifier" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </xsd:sequence>
  <xsd:attribute name="id" type="xsd:string" use="optional"/>
</xsd:complexType>

<xsd:complexType name="Identifier">
  <xsd:complexContent>
    <xsd:extension base="cmn:BaseObject">
      <xsd:attribute name="id" type="xsd:string" use="optional"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="idRoleRef" type="xsd:string" use="optional"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="idContextRef" type="xsd:string" use="optional"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>

Notes

- idRoleRef references the uid of a Class, ExternalClass or ExternalOwlClass
- idContextRef references the uid of an Identifier or an Organization

Examples:

<Organization uid="o-1">
  <Id id="mercedes-benz.com"/>
</Organization>

<Part uid="p-1">
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="pid-1" id="as1" idContextRef="o-1"/>
  </Id>
</Part>

<Part uid="p-1">
  <Id>
    <Identifier uid="pid-1" id="as1" idContextRef="o-1"/>
    <Identifier uid="pid-2" id="assy1" idContextRef="o-2"/>
  </Id>
</Part>

A.1.10 Multilanguage Support

Two representations are supported:

- Compact text strings with optional language indication
- xsd:language is used for the language indication
  - Country and language code conforming to RFC 3066

<xsd:group name="MultilingualStringSelect">
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:element name="CharacterString" type="xsd:string"/>
    <xsd:element name="LocalizedString" type="LocalizedString" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>
<xsd:complexType name="LocalizedString" mixed="true">
  <xsd:complexContent mixed="true">
    <xsd:extension base="cmn:BaseObject">
      <xsd:attribute name="lang" type="xsd:language" use="optional"/>
    </xsd:extension>
  </xsd:complexContent>
</xsd:complexType>

Example:

<ActivityMethod uid="am-2">
  <Consequence>
    <LocalizedString>no consequence</LocalizedString>
    <LocalizedString lang="en-GB">no consequence</LocalizedString>
    <LocalizedString lang="de-DE">keine Konsequenz</LocalizedString>
    <LocalizedString lang="fr-FR">aucun conséquence</LocalizedString>
  </Consequence>
</ActivityMethod>

The AP242 specification refers to ISO 639-2 for the language code and to ISO 3166-1 for the country code. They enable the specification of a language code optionally followed by a country code, for example 'en' or 'en-US'. The EXPRESS TYPE Language defined as LIST[1:2] OF STRING is mapped to XML as xsd:language, where the language code and the country code are concatenated.

The AP242 specification refers to ISO 639-2 for the language code and to ISO 3166-1 for the country code. They enable the specification of a language code optionally followed by a country code, for example 'en' or 'en-US'. The EXPRESS TYPE Language defined as LIST[1:2] OF STRING is mapped to XML as xsd:language, where the language code and the country code are concatenated.

The W3C definition of xsd:language englobes these two ISO standards plus further ones in RFC 3066 (IANA and unofficial languages) => these shall not be used.

A.1.11 Representation of Date and Time
xsd:dateTime is used instead of String.

As in EXPRESS Time is not optional, to avoid conversion problems it shall be provided as "T00:00:00".

A.2 Unit of Serialization
The EXPRESS Schema is mapped to AP242_BusinessObjectModel.xsd into a DataContainer. To be a valid XML, a DataContainer has to be included into an UoS object (Unit of Serialization) defined in common.xsd. The UoS contains a mandatory header element that contains administrative information that characterizes the content of the data package.

The header elements are described in ISO 10303-28:2007, section 5.2, as follows:

- **Name:** human readable identifier for the XML resource
- **TimeStamp:** date and time when the XML resource was created
- **Author:** identifies the person or group of persons who created the XML resource
- **Organization:** identifies the organization that created, or is responsible for, the XML resource
- **PreprocessorVersion:** identifies the software system that created the XML resource itself, including platform and version identifiers.

**NOTE:** The preprocessor_version will identify the system that was used to produce the XML resource. It may well be distinct from the software system that created or captured the original information.
• **OriginatingSystem**: identifies the software system that created or captured the information contained in the XML resource, including platform and version identifiers

• **Authorization**: specifies the release authorization for the XML resource and the signatory, where appropriate.

  **NOTE**: This may be distinct from the authorizations for various information units contained within the document.

• **Documentation**: free text field for information


### A.3 XML configuration specification

This section contains the configuration specification.

```xml
  ../../../implementation_resources/iso10303_28_document_schema/doc.xsd
  ../../../implementation_resources/iso10303_28_configuration_language_schema/configuration_language.xsd
  ../../../implementation_resources/iso10303_28_base_xml_schema/exp.xsd">```
Annex B  Known Issues

This section lists known issues with the AP242 Business Object Model. These include errors in the XSD, mismatches between the EXPRESS and XML schemas, deficiencies in the documentation and other issues that have already been communicated to the AP242 maintenance / development team for resolution.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issue Number</th>
<th>Short Description</th>
<th>URL on Bugzilla</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>#5078</td>
<td>Instantiation of SpecifiedOccurence in XSD is not possible</td>
<td><a href="http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5078">http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5078</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#5079</td>
<td>Definition and support of UNIQUE rules</td>
<td><a href="http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5079">http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5079</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#5080</td>
<td>Definition and support of WHERE rules</td>
<td><a href="http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5080">http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5080</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#5081</td>
<td>Cardinality Constraints</td>
<td><a href="http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5081">http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5081</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#5082</td>
<td>Multidimensional Aggregates</td>
<td><a href="http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5082">http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5082</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#5083</td>
<td>Mapping of the INVERSE attributes</td>
<td><a href="http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5083">http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5083</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#5084</td>
<td>Mapping of attributes of type LOGICAL</td>
<td><a href="http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5084">http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5084</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#5085</td>
<td>Mapping of attributes of type ENUMERATION</td>
<td><a href="http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5085">http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5085</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#5086</td>
<td>Multiple inheritance for Condition-alEffectivities and the other sub-types of Effectivity</td>
<td><a href="http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5086">http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5086</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#5087</td>
<td>key and keyref</td>
<td><a href="http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5087">http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5087</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#5089</td>
<td>idRoleRef</td>
<td><a href="http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5089">http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5089</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#5090</td>
<td>Two identifier values are possible in XML</td>
<td><a href="http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5090">http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5090</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#5094</td>
<td>EXPRESS attributes renamed in the XSD</td>
<td><a href="http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5094">http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5094</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#5095</td>
<td>ViewOccurrenceRelation</td>
<td><a href="http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5095">http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5095</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ship.relationType</td>
<td>#5110</td>
<td>common.xsd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#5111</td>
<td>File.FileType</td>
<td><a href="http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5111">http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5111</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#5153</td>
<td>semantical type checking in bom.xsd for File.FileType</td>
<td><a href="http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5153">http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5153</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#5155</td>
<td>ShapeElement defined as RootObject, but misses the attribute 'ElementOf'</td>
<td><a href="http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5155">http://www.wikistep.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=5155</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Annex C  Reference Documents

This recommended practices document is based on and derived from various other documents, schemas, and technical presentations. Those resources are listed below:

- AP242 IS BO Model XML / EXPRESS Schema
  - Dated May 5, 2014
- Model Usage Guidance for STEP AP242 BO Model CAD Exchange (DOC)
  - Release 0.2, July 16, 2012
  - Authors: F. Darré, A. Fournier
- STEP AP242 XML Nested Assembly Approach (PPT)
  - February 24, 2014
  - Authors: M. Ungerer, G. Hirel
- AP242 BO Model IS - Simplified Shape Association and Transformation (PPT)
  - February 24, 2014
  - Author: M. Ungerer
  - Geometric and Assembly Validation Properties: Release 4.2; Oct. 9, 2014
  - External References: Release 3.1; Jan. 20, 2014
  - User Defined Attributes: Release 1.3; Oct. 9, 2014
  - STEP File Compression: Release 1.1; Nov. 21, 2013
  - PDM Schema Usage Guide: Release 4.3; Jan., 2002
- LOTAR Part 115 “Explicit CAD Assembly Structure”
- JT Application Benchmark 2013 Experiences
Annex D  Conversion from implicitly to explicitly defined transformation

The first step is now to extract the two matrices implicitly given by each of the two placements. The axis2_placement_3d has a name, a location and two axes as attributes. The axes are the axis and ref_direction attribute, where axis is the placement Z axis direction and the ref_direction is an approximate to the placement X axis direction. From this information, a right-handed coordinate system is computed:

Let \( z \) be the placement Z axis direction and \( a \) be the approximate placement X axis direction. Approximate here means that \( a \) and \( z \) are not required to be orthogonal. Then the exact placement X axis direction is given as \( x = \langle a - (a \cdot z) z \rangle \) and the placement Y axis direction calculates to \( y = \langle z \times x \rangle \).

For the first representation item, the following calculations would result:

Axis: \[
\begin{pmatrix}
0.0 \\
-0.8660254 \\
0.5
\end{pmatrix}
\]
ref_direction: \[
\begin{pmatrix}
1.0 \\
0.0 \\
0.0
\end{pmatrix}
\]

therefore \( x = \langle a - (a \cdot z) z \rangle = \langle a - 0z \rangle = a \) because \( z \) and \( a \) are already orthogonal in this example.

Next step is calculating \( y \) using the vector product: \[
\begin{pmatrix}
0.0 \\
0.5 \\
0.8660254
\end{pmatrix}
\]

So the geometric function which leads from the coordinates of the global coordinate system to those of the first axis placement is represented by the rotation matrix \( A \) given by the three vectors \( x \), \( y \) and \( z \) plus the translation vector \( t \) given by the axis2_placement_3d’s location attribute:

\[
A = \begin{pmatrix}
1.0 & 0.0 & 0.0 \\
0.0 & 0.5 & -0.8660254 \\
0.0 & 0.8660254 & 0.5
\end{pmatrix},
t = \begin{pmatrix}
1.0 \\
0.0 \\
3.0
\end{pmatrix}
\]

In the same way, the matrix \( B \) and the vector \( u \) are computed from the second axis placement:
Geometrically, the matrix $A$ defines a $60^\circ$ rotation around the global X axis and the matrix $B$ gives a $45^\circ$ rotation around the global Z axis.

To get the explicit transformation from the information gained so far, the matrices have to be combined. The idea is as follows: To move a point from a location within the first placement into a location within the second one, three steps have to be made:

First, the point has to be multiplied with the inverted matrix $A^{-1}$ to undo the rotation, which occurs when going from the global coordinate system into the first placement system.

Next, multiply it with the second matrix $B$ to get it into the right position for the target placement.

Finally, a translation vector is needed to put the point into its correct location within the second axis placement. Calculation of this vector can be seen below.

As $A$ is a rotation matrix, the inverted matrix $A^{-1} = A^T$, the transposed matrix. Steps 1 and 2 can be combined:

\[
C = BA^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix}
0.7071068 & -0.3535534 & -0.6123724 \\
0.7071068 & 0.3535534 & 0.6123724 \\
0.0 & -0.8660254 & 0.5
\end{pmatrix}
\]

The translation vector needed is

\[
v = u - Ct = \begin{pmatrix}
3.4835639 \\
-0.8977775 \\
0.3660254
\end{pmatrix}
\]

This means moving any point $P$ from a location within the first placement into the second one follows the calculation

\[
P' = C \cdot P + v
\]

---

**Annex E  Recommendation for the Definition of Units**

This clause provides recommendations for instance population for the definition of units in the data set. Once the definition is created, other data instances reference the units as required.

**Note:** The definitions given in this Annex are valid for AP242 edition 1 BO Model schema.

---

2 http://www.nist.gov/pml/wmd/metric/si-units.cfm
E.1 SI Base Unit Definitions

The following is the recommendation for exchange of SI base unit definitions:

Millimetre:

<Unit uid="u--100000001">
  <Kind><ClassString>SI system</ClassString></Kind>
  <Name><ClassString>metre</ClassString></Name>
  <Prefix><ClassString>milli</ClassString></Prefix>
  <Quantity><ClassString>length</ClassString></Quantity>
</Unit>

Kilogram:

<Unit uid="u--100000002">
  <Kind><ClassString>SI system</ClassString></Kind>
  <Name><ClassString>gram</ClassString></Name>
  <Prefix><ClassString>kilo</ClassString></Prefix>
  <Quantity><ClassString>mass</ClassString></Quantity>
</Unit>

Seconds:

<Unit uid="u--100000003">
  <Kind><ClassString>SI system</ClassString></Kind>
  <Name><ClassString>second</ClassString></Name>
  <Quantity><ClassString>time</ClassString></Quantity>
</Unit>

Ampère:

<Unit uid="u--100000004">
  <Kind><ClassString>SI system</ClassString></Kind>
  <Name><ClassString>ampere</ClassString></Name>
  <Quantity><ClassString>electric current</ClassString></Quantity>
</Unit>

Kelvin:

<Unit uid="u--100000005">
  <Kind><ClassString>SI system</ClassString></Kind>
  <Name><ClassString>kelvin</ClassString></Name>
  <Quantity><ClassString>thermodynamic temperature</ClassString></Quantity>
</Unit>

Mole:

<Unit uid="u--100000006">
  <Kind><ClassString>SI system</ClassString></Kind>
  <Name><ClassString>mole</ClassString></Name>
  <Quantity><ClassString>amount of substance</ClassString></Quantity>
</Unit>

Candela:

<Unit uid="u--100000007">
  <Kind><ClassString>SI system</ClassString></Kind>
  <Name><ClassString>candela</ClassString></Name>
  <Quantity><ClassString>luminous intensity</ClassString></Quantity>
</Unit>

---

3 This instance is created to support definition of SI derived units and is the formal definition that the kilo-gram is the SI unit of mass.
E.2 SI Derived Units

SI derived unit exchange should use the Unit element with the Unit.kind attribute set to ‘SI derived unit’.

List of SI derived units from Part 41:
- absorbed dose
- radioactivity
- capacitance
- dose equivalent
- electric charge
- conductance
- electric potential
- energy
- magnetic flux density
- force
- frequency
- illuminance
- inductance
- magnetic flux
- power
- pressure
- resistance

E.3 Unspecified SI Derived Units

To exchange these covert units, use the Unit element with the Unit.kind attribute set to ‘Unspecified SI derived unit’.

The following derived units are included in Part 41 but their system of units is unspecified in Part 41:
- acceleration
- area
- velocity
- volume

E.4 Unspecified Units

To exchange units which are neither SI units nor derived from SI units, the Unit element shall be used with the Unit.kind attributes set to ‘Unspecified’.

Byte:

```xml
<Unit uid="u--100000009">
  <Kind><ClassString>Unspecified</ClassString></Kind>
  <Name><ClassString>byte</ClassString></Name>
  <Quantity><ClassString>data size</ClassString></Quantity>
</Unit>
```

Note that for bytes, two classes of prefixes exist; the SI prefixes (base 10) and the IEC prefixes (base 2). So 1 Kilobyte = 1000 Byte, while 1 Kibibyte = 1024 Byte. The following table gives an overview:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SI Name</th>
<th>SI Symbol</th>
<th>Factor</th>
<th>Difference (rounded)</th>
<th>IEC Name</th>
<th>IEC Symbol</th>
<th>Factor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kilobyte</td>
<td>kB</td>
<td>$10^3$</td>
<td>2.40%</td>
<td>Kibibyte</td>
<td>KiB</td>
<td>$2^{10}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Megabyte</td>
<td>MB</td>
<td>$10^6$</td>
<td>4.86%</td>
<td>Mebibyte</td>
<td>MiB</td>
<td>$2^{20}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gigabyte</td>
<td>GB</td>
<td>$10^9$</td>
<td>7.37%</td>
<td>Gbibyte</td>
<td>GiB</td>
<td>$2^{30}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terabyte</td>
<td>TB</td>
<td>$10^{12}$</td>
<td>9.95%</td>
<td>Tebibyte</td>
<td>TiB</td>
<td>$2^{40}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petabyte</td>
<td>PB</td>
<td>$10^{15}$</td>
<td>12.6%</td>
<td>Pebibyte</td>
<td>PiB</td>
<td>$2^{50}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exabyte</td>
<td>EB</td>
<td>$10^{18}$</td>
<td>15.3%</td>
<td>Exbibyte</td>
<td>EiB</td>
<td>$2^{60}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zettabyte</td>
<td>ZB</td>
<td>$10^{21}$</td>
<td>18.1%</td>
<td>Zebibyte</td>
<td>ZiB</td>
<td>$2^{70}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yottabyte</td>
<td>YB</td>
<td>$10^{24}$</td>
<td>20.9%</td>
<td>Yobibyte</td>
<td>YiB</td>
<td>$2^{80}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The names of IEC prefixes are derived from the SI prefixes, where “kibi” means “kilo-binary”, “mebi” means “mega-binary” and so on. As shown in the table above, the difference in data size between using base 2 or base 10 for the prefixes is significant for higher factors. See [http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/binary.html](http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/binary.html) for background information.
## Annex F  AP214 AIM to AP242 BOM Mapping

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Comments</th>
<th>Mapping to STEP AP242 BO Model</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Part Identification</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>product</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>Part</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Part</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>Part</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frame_of_reference</td>
<td>ref. to product_context</td>
<td>no recommendation on the value</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>product_context</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>no recommendation on the value</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frame_of_reference</td>
<td>ref. to application context</td>
<td>no recommendation on the value</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discipline_type</td>
<td></td>
<td>no recommendation on the value</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>application_context</td>
<td>application</td>
<td>xsi:schemaLocation</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>application_protocol_definition</td>
<td>application_interpreted_model_schema_name</td>
<td>xsi:schemaLocation</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>application_protocol_year</td>
<td></td>
<td>xsi:schemaLocation</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>status</td>
<td></td>
<td>xsi:schemaLocation</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>product_related_product_category</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>Part</td>
<td>PartTypes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>no recommendation on the value</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>products</td>
<td>ref. to product</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>product_category_relationship</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>no recommendation on the value</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>category</td>
<td>SubsetMember</td>
<td>Superset</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sub_category</td>
<td>SubsetMember</td>
<td>Subset</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>product_definition_formation</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>PartVersion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>PartVersion</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of_product</td>
<td>ref. to product</td>
<td>Part</td>
<td>Versions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>product_definition</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>PartView / AssemblyDefinition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>PartView / AssemblyDefinition</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formation</td>
<td>PartView / AssemblyDefinition</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frame_of_reference</td>
<td>ref. to product_definition_formation</td>
<td>PartView / AssemblyDefinition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>product_definition_context</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>ViewContext</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frame_of_reference</td>
<td>ref. to application_context</td>
<td>ViewContext</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lifecycle_stage</td>
<td>ViewContext</td>
<td>LifeCycleStage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>application_context</td>
<td>application</td>
<td>ViewContext</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ViewContext</td>
<td>ApplicationDomain</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Part Properties</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>product_definition_shape</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>recommendation as empty string</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>definition</td>
<td>ref. to product_definition</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shape_definition_representation</td>
<td>definition</td>
<td>ref. to product_definition_shape</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>used_representation</td>
<td>ref. to shape_representation</td>
<td>PartView / AssemblyDefinition</td>
<td>DefiningGeometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shape_representation</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>ExternalGeometricModel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>items</td>
<td>ExternalGeometricModel</td>
<td>Items</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>context_of_items</td>
<td>ExternalGeometricModel</td>
<td>ContextOfItems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geometric_representation_context</td>
<td>context_identifier</td>
<td>GeometricCoordinateSpace</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>context_type</td>
<td>Unique value recommended : &quot;External&quot;</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinate_space_dimension</td>
<td>GeometricCoordinateSpace</td>
<td>DimensionCount</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geometric_representation_item</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>RepresentationItem</td>
<td>Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>axis2_placement_3d</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>AxisPlacement</td>
<td>Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location</td>
<td>AxisPlacement</td>
<td>Position</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>axis</td>
<td>AxisPlacement</td>
<td>Axis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ref_direction</td>
<td>AxisPlacement</td>
<td>RefDirection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>shape_aspect</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>ShapeElement</th>
<th>Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>ShapeElement</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of_shape</td>
<td>ShapeElement</td>
<td>ElementOf</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>property_definition</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>Unique value recommended: &quot;external definition&quot;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>property_definition_representation</th>
<th>definition</th>
<th>ExternalGeometricModel</th>
<th>ExternalFile</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>used_representation</td>
<td>ref. to shape representation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>representation_relationship_with_transformation</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage</th>
<th>Placement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rep_1</td>
<td>ref. to shape_representation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rep_2</td>
<td>ref. to shape_representation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transformation_operator</td>
<td>ref. to item_defined_transformation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>item_defined_transformation</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>Use of the appropriate entity regarding the type of transformation:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transform_item_1</td>
<td>GeometricRepresentationRelationshipWith-PlacementTransformation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transform_item_2</td>
<td>GeometricRepresentationRelationshipWith-SameCoordinateSpace</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cartesian_transformation_operator</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>CartesianTransformation</th>
<th>Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>axis1</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>axis2</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local_origin</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scale</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>axis3</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part Structure and Relationships</th>
<th>next_assembly_usage_occurrence</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>id</td>
<td>NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage</td>
<td>Id</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage</td>
<td>RelationType</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relating_product_definition</td>
<td>NextAssemblyOccurrenceUsage</td>
<td>Relating</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>related_product_definition</td>
<td>SingleOccurrence</td>
<td>Definition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reference_designator</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>product_definition_shape</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>recommendation as empty string</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>definition</td>
<td>ref. to next_assembly_usage_occurrence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>context_dependent_shape_representation</th>
<th>representation_relation</th>
<th>ref. to representation_relationship</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>represented_product_relation</td>
<td>ref. to product_definition_shape</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Document Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>product</th>
<th>id</th>
<th>Document</th>
<th>id</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Document</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>Document</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frame of reference</td>
<td>ref. to product context</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| product_context | name | no recommendation on the value |
| frame of reference | ref. to application context | no mapping needed |
| discipline_type | no recommendation on the value | no mapping needed |

| application_context | application | xsi:schemaLocation |
| application_protocol_definition | application interpreted model_schema_name | xsi:schemaLocation |
| application_protocol_year | xsi:schemaLocation |
| status | xsi:schemaLocation |
| applications | ref. to application_context | no mapping needed |

| product_related_product_category | name | no recommendation on the value |
| description | no recommendation on the value | no mapping needed |
| products | ref. to product | no mapping needed |

| product_category_relationship | name | no recommendation on the value |
| description | optional | no mapping needed |

| category | SubsetMember | Superset |
| sub_category | SubsetMember | Subset |

| product_definition_formation | id | DocumentVersion | id |
| description | DocumentVersion | Description |
| of_product | ref. to product | Document | Versions |

| product_definition | id | DigitalDocumentDefinition | id |
| description | DigitalDocumentDefinition | Description |
| formation | DigitalDocumentDefinition | Views |
| frame of reference | ref. to product definition formation | no mapping needed |

| product_definition_context | name | managed by DocumentDefinition subtypes |
| frame of reference | ref. to application_context | no mapping needed |
| life cycle stage | no mapping needed |

| application_context | application | no mapping needed |

## External Files

| document_file | id | DigitalFile | id |
| name | DigitalFile | Description |
| description | optional | no mapping needed |

| document_representation_type | name | managed by File subtypes |
| represented_document | ref. to document_file | no mapping needed |

| document_type | product_data_type | DigitalFile | FileType |
| applied_identification_assignment | assigned_id | DigitalFile | VersionId |
| role | ref. to identification role | no mapping needed |
| items | ref. to document_file | no mapping needed |

| identification_role | name | recommendation as "version" string |
| description | optional | managed by DigitalFile attribute name |

## Relationship Between Documents and Constituent Files

| product_definition_with_associated_documents | id | DigitalDocumentDefinition | id |
| description | DigitalDocumentDefinition | Description |
| formation | ref. to product definition formation | DocumentVersion | Views |
| frame of reference | ref. to product definition context | no mapping needed |
| documentation_ids | ref. to document_file | DigitalDocumentDefinition | Files |
### Document and File Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>property_definition</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>recommendation as &quot;document property&quot; string</th>
<th>no mapping needed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>description</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>definition</td>
<td>ref. to document_file</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>property_definition_representation</th>
<th>definition</th>
<th>ref. to property_definition</th>
<th>no mapping needed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>used_representation</td>
<td>ref. to representation</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>representation</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>managed by the name of the appropriate property entity</th>
<th>no mapping needed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>items</td>
<td>ref. to descriptive/measure_representation_item</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>context_of_items</td>
<td>ref. to representation_context</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>id</td>
<td>should not be instantiated</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>should not be instantiated</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>representation_context</th>
<th>context_identifier</th>
<th>no value specified</th>
<th>no mapping needed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>context_type</td>
<td>recommendation as &quot;document parameters&quot; string</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>descriptive_representation_item</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>Use of the appropriate property :</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>description</td>
<td>ContentProperty for content information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>measure_representation_item</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>CreationProperty for creation information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value_component</td>
<td></td>
<td>FormatProperty for format information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unit_component</td>
<td></td>
<td>SizeProperty for size information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>identification_role</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>DocumentFileProperty template for additional document properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td></td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>applied_external_identification_assignment</th>
<th>assigned_id</th>
<th>ExternalItem</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>no mapping needed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>role</td>
<td>ref. to identification_role</td>
<td>ExternalItem</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>source</td>
<td>ref. to external source</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>items</td>
<td>ref. to document_file</td>
<td>DigitalFile</td>
<td>Locations</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>external_source</th>
<th>source_id</th>
<th>ExternalItem</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>no mapping needed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>should not be instantiated</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Document and File Association with Product Data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>document_product_equivalence</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>recommendation as &quot;equivalence&quot; string</th>
<th>Out of scope</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>document</th>
<th>id</th>
<th>should not be instantiated</th>
<th>Out of scope</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>ref. to document_type</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>document_type</th>
<th>product_data_type</th>
<th>Out of scope</th>
<th>no mapping needed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>applied_document_reference</th>
<th>source</th>
<th>no value specified</th>
<th>DocumentAssignment</th>
<th>AssignedDocument</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>assigned_document</td>
<td>ref. to document or document_file</td>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>AssignedDocument</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>items</td>
<td>ref. to product_definition</td>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>AssignedTo</td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>role_association</th>
<th>item_with_role</th>
<th>ref. to applied_document_reference</th>
<th>no mapping needed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>role</td>
<td>ref. to object_role</td>
<td></td>
<td>no mapping needed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>object_role</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>DocumentAssignment</th>
<th>Role</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td>DocumentAssignment</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>